



English

Listening and Speaking



มหาวิทยาลัย
มหาจุฬาลงกรณราชวิทยาลัย
วิทยาเขตนครราชสีมา



CHAMNONG PUPHALA

Education

- o Pre.B.Ed
- o B.Ed
- o M.A. (Linguistics) University of Mysore (2534)

Experience

- o Language and communication
- o English I,II,III
- o Phonetic
- o Listening and speaking I,II,III
- o English structure 1,2
- o Seminar in English
- o History of the English
- o English Novel I
- o English III
- o Morphology and syntax
- o Structure and Reading in English
- o Public speaking
- o Dhamma in English
- o Translation
- o Intercultural Communication in the English Speaking World

INTRODUCTION

The present monograph, LISTENING AND SPEAKING 301 304 402, is the second in the series of project monographs. compiled by Lecture CHAMNONG PUPHALA Pre.B.ed,B.ed,M.A. (Linguistic) from the Faculty of Humanities, Mahachulalongkornrajavidalaya University, NakornRatchasima Campus This covers the scope of(LS 301 304 402) for all 2,3,4, year students in this institute In fact the sufficient reference monographs covering the scope of this subject are not perfectly provided. There fore we are pleased to bring out this monographs covering scopes subject the University for students convenience to refer and concentrate on while they are enrolled in the course.

We gratefully recognize the compiler's painstaking efforts and devotion given to the institute and express our sincere hope that his works benefit students and their education and their educational fulfillment.

Mr. CHAMNONG PUPHALA

Mahachulalongkornrajavidyalaya.

NakornRatchasima Campus

25 July1995

CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	A
CONTENTS	B
1. First meeting / Conversations	1
2. Greetings / Conversations	2
3. Going to the University / Conversations	3
4. Going to the School / Conversations	4
5. Going to the hospital / Conversations	5
6. Going to A-TECH School / Conversations	6
7. Going to C-TECH School / Conversations	7
8. Going to Technical College / Conversations	8
9. Going to Mary School / Conversations	9
10. Going to Suranary School / Conversations	10
11. Going to Ratchasima School / Conversations	11
12. Going to Korat Memorial / Conversations	12
13. Going to P Peat Hospital / Conversations	13
14. Going to Mahraja Hospital / Conversations	14
15. Description / Conversations	15
16. Important Sentences / Conversation	16
17. Important Sentences / Conversation	17
18. Important Sentence / Conversation	18
9. Important Sentences / Conversations	19
20. Generals / Conversations	20
21. Meeting / Conversations	21

22. Talking about The University / Conversations	22
23. Talking about campus of The University / Conversations	23
24. First meeting / Conversations	24
25. Parting / Conversations	25
26. Do you speak English ? / Conversations	26
27. Daily Activities / Conversations	27
28. Asking about Activities / Conversations	28
29. Asking about Activities / Conversations	29
30. Talking about Activities / Conversations	30
31. Evening Activities / Conversations.	31
32. English and American Language / Conversations	32
33. English and American Language / Conversations	33
34. English and American Language / Conversations	34
35. Clothes / Conversations	35
36. General Activities / Conversations	36
37. How Do I Get There? / Conversation Drills.	37
38. American Money and Prices / Conversation Drills	38
39. Verb, Object, preposition / Conversations	39
40. Adjective + Preposition / Conversations	40
41. Adjective + Preposition / Conversation Drills	41
42. Participle + Preposition / Conversations	42
43. Word Forms / Conversations	43
44. Word Forms / Conversations	44
45. Word Forms / Conversations	45
46. Word Forms / Conversations	46
47. Meeting at the Train Station / Conversations	47

48. Asking Questions at the Train Station / Conversations	48
49. Meeting at the Airport / Conversations	49
50. Getting Information at the Airport / Conversations	50
51. Getting to the Hotel / Conversations	51
52. Finding One's Hotel / Conversations	52
53. Getting to the Royal Princess Hotel / Conversations	53
54. Getting to the Sima Thani Hotel / Conversations	54
55. Getting to the Hotel / Conversations	55
56. Getting to the Most Hotel / Conversations	56
57. Getting to the Best Hotel / Conversations	57
58. Getting to the Royal Hotel / Conversations	58
59. The Grand palace (Wat Prakao) / Conversations	59
60. To visit the national Museum / Conversations	60
61. A Buddhist Nun / Conversations	61
62. Visakha Puja Day / Conversations	62
63. Historical of Prasat Hin Phimai / Conversations	63
64. Phimai National Museum / Conversations	64
65. Prasat Hin Phanom Wan Historical / Conversations	65
66. Khao Phanom Rug Historical Park / Conversations	66
67. Phu Kradung National Park / Conversations	67
68. The monuments of Thao Suranari / Conversations	68
69. Wat Po or The Reclining Buddha / Conversations	69
70. Wat Phra Pathom Chedi / Conversations	70
71. Wat Phrathat Doi Suthep / Conversations.	71
72. Wat Trimit / Conversations	72

73. Wat Phrasriratnamahathat / Conversations.	73
74. Wat Phranaraymaharat / Conversations	74
75. Wat Phanan Choeng / Conversations	75
76. Nakhonratchasima Province / Conversations	76
77. Wat Phrasrirattana Mahathatu / Conversations	77
78. Wat Bueng / Conversations	78
79. Khao yai National Park / Conversations	79
80. Phra that Kham Kaen / Conversations	80
81. Thai New year / Conversations	81
82. Loy Krathong festival / Conversations	82
83. Thai boxing / Conversations	83
84. Rocket Festival (Boon bang fai) / Conversations	84
85. Buddhist in Thailand / Conversations	85
86. Buddhist Lent / Conversations	86
87. King's Birthday / Conversations	87
88. Kathin Ceremony / Conversations	88
89. Makapuja Day / Conversations	89
90. Songkran Festival / Conversations	90
91. Asking about Activities / Conversations	91
92. Getting Information / Conversations	92
93. Finding one's Way / Conversations	93
94. Asking about Buses / Conversations	94
95. Traveling by Bus / Conversations	95
96. Going by Taxi / Conversations	96
97. Taking a trip by car / Conversations	97

98. Travel by Plans / Conversations	98
99. Asking the time A / Conversations	99
100. Asking the Time B / Conversations	100
101. Noun Clause vs. Question / Conversations	101
102. Infinitive of Reason or Purpose / Conversations	102
103. Infinitive vs. Gerund / Conversations	103
104. Infinitive vs. Gerund / Conversations	104
105. Conjunctive + Infinitive / Conversations	105
106. Infinitive after Adjectival / Conversations	106
107. Infinitive after Adjectives / Conversations	107
108. Infinitive after Too or Enough / Conversations	108
109. Final Prepositions / Conversations	109
110. Final Prepositions / Conversations	110
111. Going by the clock / Conversations	111
112. At the Grocery Store / Conversations	112
113. Arriving Early or Late / Conversations	113
114. Watches and the Time / Conversation Drills	114
115. Time and the Calendar / Conversations	115
116. Days, Dates, and Seasons / Conversation Drill	116
117. Living in an apartment / Conversations	117
118. Living in a House / Conversations	118
119. Using the Telephone / Conversations	119
120. Getting Help in stress / Conversations	120
121. Going Shopping / Conversations	121
122. Shopping in Big C / Conversations	122

123. Talking about Shopping / Conversations	123
124. Shopping in The Mall / Conversations	124
125. Shopping in Tesco Lotus / Conversations	125
126. Shopping in Makro / Conversations	126
127. Shopping in Klang Plaza / Conversations	127
128. Shopping in Night BAZAAR / Conversations	128
129. Shopping for Clothes / Conversations	129
130. Asking about prices / Conversations	130
131. How Much does It Cost / Conversations	131
132. Money Problems / Conversations.	132
133. Talking about Money / Conversations	133
134. Talking about Telegrams / Conversations	134
135. Checking in / Conversations	135
136. Reserving and Ordering / Conversations	136
137. Lending and Borrowing Money / Conversations	137
138. At the Post Office / Conversations	138
139. At the Grocery Store / Conversations	139
140. Shopping for Groceries / Conversations	140
141. Identifying People / Conversations	141
142. Immediate Family and Relatives / Conversations	142
143. Identifying Things / Conversations	143
144. Sending and receiving Letters / Conversations	144
145. More about Letters / Conversations	145
146. Getting Change / Conversations	146
147. American Money and Prices / Conversation Drills	147

148.What's it Like Outside? / Conversations	148
149.Talking about the Weather / Conversations	149
150.Weather Conditions / Conversations	150
151.Using Expressions of / Conversations	151
152. Dates and Periods of Time / Conversations	152
153.Vacation Time / Conversations	153
154.Trips and Sights-Seeing / Conversations	154
155.Talking about Eating / Conversations	155
156.Eating Out / Conversations	156
157. Breakfast and Lunch at a Restaurant / Conversations	157
158. Ordering Food / Conversations	158
159. Having Dinner at a Restaurant / Conversations	159
160. Dinner Conversations / Conversations	160
161. Personal Health / Conversations	161
162. Shopping for clothes / Conversations	162
163. Going to picnic / Conversations	163
164. Having Dinner / Conversations	164
165. Come from Thailand / Conversations	165
166. At the Geoffrey Store / Conversations	166
167. Common Health problems / Conversations	167
168. At the Doctor 's office / Conversations	168
169. Quitting and Finding Jobs / Conversations.	169
170. Office Details / Conversations	170
171. Changing Money / Conversations	171
172. Office Conversation / Conversations	172

173. Conversation about University / Conversations	173
174. Going to the University / Conversations	174
175. The English Class / Conversations	175
176. Learning and Using English / Conversations	176
177. Buying a train Ticket / Conversations	177
178. Indian education systems / Conversations	178
179. Going to study abroad / Conversations	179
180. On the plane / Conversations	180
181. Immigration / Conversations	181
182. At the custom / Conversations	182
183. Verb, Object, preposition / Conversations	183
184. Adjective + Preposition / Conversations	184
185. Adjective + Preposition / Conversation Drills	185
186. Participle + Preposition / Conversations	186
187. Word Forms / Conversations	187
188. Word Forms / Conversations	188
189. Word Forms / Conversations	189
190. Word Forms / Conversations	190
191. Word Forms / Conversation Drills	191
192. Interrogative Words / Conversations	192
193. Interrogative Words / Conversations	193
194. Irregular Verbs / Conversations	194
195. Irregular Verbs / Conversations	195
196. Tag Questions / Conversations	196
197. Tag Question / Conversations.	197

198. Verb Not Repeated / Conversations	198
199. Verb Not Repeated / Conversations	199
200. Verb Not Repeated / Conversations	200
201. Verb Not Repeated / Conversations	201
202. Misuse of forms English/Conversations	202-251
251. Incorrect omissions / Conversations	251-275
275. The infinitive without “to” English / Conversations	275-300

Conversation 1

C1.Hello.

C2.Hi.

C1.Good morning.

C2.Good afternoon.

Conversation 2

C1.Good evening.

C2.Good night.

C1.Good-bye.

C2.So long.

Conversation 3

C1.See you.

C2.See you later.

C1.See you tomorrow.

C2.See you soon.

Conversation 4

C1.How do you do?

C2.How are you?

C1.Very well thank you.

C2.Fine thanks.

Conversation 5

C1.I am very well thank you.

C2.I am fine, thank you.

C1.Not so bad, thanks.

C2.Very good.

2.Greetings / Conversations

Basic English 2

Conversation 1

C1.Hello, good afternoon how are you?

C2.Yes I am fine thank you.

C1.It's nice to see you.

C2.Yes, ok thank you.

Conversation 2

C1.I want you to meet my friend Somsak?

C2.This is Somsak.

C1.How do you do Somask?

C2.I am very glad to meet you.

Conversation 3

C1.What school are you in?

C2.I'm in NakonRatchasima High School.

C1.What grade are you had?

C2.I'm in the nineth grade.

Conversation 4

C1.What is your name?

C2.My name is Phramaha Somsak.

C1.What subject do you like?

C2.I like English subject.

Conversation 5

C1.Where do you come from?

C2.I come from Burirum Province.

C1.How far from here?

C2.A bout 50 Kilometers from here.

♣ ♣ ♣ Love but don't be blind ♣ ♣ ♣

3. Going to the University / Conversations

Basic English 3

Conversation 1

C1.How do you go to the University?

C2.I usually go on foot.

C1.Why don't you go by bus?

C2.The University is just short walk from my temple.

Conversation 2

C1.Shall we go by bus?

C2.No, we shall not

C1.We shall walk.

C2.The University is very near my Temple.

Conversation 3

C1 Do you walk?

C2.Yes, I do.

C1.I like to walk.

C2.Because walking is a very good exercise

Conversation 4

S1.Why do you like to walk?

C2.Because walking is a good exercise.

C1.Do you like?

C2.Yes I do.

Conversation 5

C1.What is your temple?

C2.My temple is Wat Phayab.

C1.How many monk are in the temple?

C2.There are 25 monks in the temple.

♣ ♣ ♣ Everyone in love is blind ♣ ♣ ♣

4. Going to the School / Conversations

Basic English 4

Conversation 1

C1.How do you do go to the School?

C2.I usually go on foot.

C1.Why don't you go by bus?

C2.The School is just short walk from my temple.

Conversation 2

C1.Shall we go by bus?

C2.No, we shan't.

C1.We shall walk.

C2.The School is very near my temple.

Conversation 3

C1 Do you walk?

C2.Yes, I do.

C1.I like to walk.

C2.Because walking very good exercise

Conversation 4

S1.Why do you like to walk?

C2.Because walking is a good exercise.

C1.Do you like?

C2.Yes I do.

Conversation 5

C1.What is your temple?

C2.My temple is Wat Phayab.

C1.How many monk are in the temple?

C2.There are 25 monks in the temple.

5. Going to the hospital / Conversations

Basic English 5

Conversation 1

C1.How do you go to the hospital?

C2.I usually go on foot.

C1.Why don't you go by bus?

C2.The hospital is just short walk from my temple.

Conversation 2

C1.Shall we go by bus?

C2.No, we shan't.

C1.We shall walk.

C2.The hospital is very near my temple.

Conversation 3

C1 Do you walk?

C2.Yes, I do.

C1.I like to walk.

C2.Because walking very good exercise

Conversation 4

S1.Why do you like to walk?

C2.Because walking is a good exercise.

C1.Do you like?

C2.Yes I do.

Conversation 5

C1.What is your temple?

C2.My temple is Wat Phayab.

C1.How many monk are in the hospital?

C2.There are 25 monks in the hospital.

6. Going to A-TECH School / Conversations

Basic English 6

Conversation 1

C1.How do you go to A-TECH Scool?

C2.I usually go by bus.

C1.Why do you go by bus?

C2.The A-TECH is fare from my temple.

Conversation 2

C1.Shall we go by bus?

C2.Yes.

C1.We shall go by bus.

C2.The A-TECH School is far from my temple.

Conversation 3

C1 Do you walk?

C2.No, I don't.

C1.I like to walk.

C2.Because it is very far.

Conversation 4

C1. How fare from here?

C2. 500 meters fare from.

C1.Do you like?

C2.Yes I do.

Conversation 5

C1.What is your temple?

C2.My temple is Wat Pa Staphondhammaruangsri.

C1.How many monk are the temple?

C2.There are 30 monks in the temple.

♣ ♣ ♣ Everyone in love is blind ♣ ♣ ♣

7. Going to C-TECH School / Conversations

Basic English 7

Conversation 1

C1.How do you go to Ratchasima School?

C2.I usually go on foot.

C1.Why don't you go by bus?

C2. C-TECH School is just short walk from my house.

Conversation 2

C1.Shall we go by bus?

C2.No, we shan't.

C1.We shall walk.

C2. C-TECH School is very near my house.

Conversation 3

C1 Do you walk?

C2.Yes, I do.

C1.I like to walk.

C2.Because walking is a very good exercise

Conversation 4

C1.Why do you like to walk?

C2.Because walking is a good exercise.

C1.Do you like?

C2.Yes I do.

Conversation 5

C1.What is your village?

C2.YAMO VILLAGE.

C1.How many house in your village?

C2.There are 500 houses in the village.

8. Going to Technical College / Conversations

Basic English 8

Conversation 1

C1.How do you do go to Technical College?

C2.I usually go on foot.

C1.Why don't you go by bus?

C2. Technical College is just short walk from my temple.

Conversation 2

C1.Shall we go by bus?

C2.No, we shan't.

C1.We shall walk.

C2. Technical College is very near my temple.

Conversation 3

C1 Do you walk?

C2.Yes, I do.

C1.I like to walk.

C2.Because walking is a very good exercise

Conversation 4

C1.Why do you like to walk?

C2.Because walking is a good exercise.

C1.Do you like?

C2.Yes I do.

Conversation 5

C1.What is your temple?

C2.My temple is Wat Po.

C1.How many monk are in the temple?

C2.There are 100 monks in the temple.

9. Going to Mary School / Conversations

Basic English 9

Conversation 1

C1. How do you go to Mary School?

C2. I usually go on foot.

C1. Why don't you go by bus?

C2. The Mary School is just a short walk from my temple.

Conversation 2

C1. Shall we go by bus?

C2. No, we shan't.

C1. We shall walk.

C2. The Mary School is very near my temple.

Conversation 3

C1. Do you walk?

C2. Yes, I do.

C1. I like to walk.

C2. Because walking is a very good exercise.

Conversation 4

C1. Why do you like to walk?

C2. Because walking is a good exercise.

C1. Do you like?

C2. Yes I do.

Conversation 5

C1. What is your temple?

C2. My temple is Wat Samolai.

C1. How many monks are in the temple?

C2. There are 50 monks in the temple.

10. Going to Suranary School / Conversations

Basic English 10

Conversation 1

C1.How do you go to Suranary School?

C2.I usually go on foot.

C1.Why don't you go by bus?

C2.Suranary School is just short walk from my temple.

Conversation 2

C1.Shall we go by bus?

C2.No, we shan't.

C1.We shall walk.

C2.Suranary School is very near my temple.

Conversation 3

C1 Do you walk?

C2.Yes, I do.

C1.I like to walk.

C2.Because walking is a very good exercise

Conversation 4

C1.Why do you like to walk?

C2.Because walking is a good exercise.

C1.Do you like?

C2.Yes I do.

Conversation 5

C1.What is your temple?

C2.My temple is Wat Samakki.

C1.How many monk are the temple?

C2.There are 40 monks in the temple.

11. Going to Ratchasima School / Conversations

Basic English 11

Conversation 1

C1.How do you go to Ratchasima School?

C2.I usually go on foot.

C1.Why don't you go by bus?

C2.Ratchasima School is just short walk from my house.

Conversation 2

C1.Shall we go by bus?

C2.No, we shan't.

C1.We shall walk.

C2.Ratchasima is very near my house.

Conversation 3

C1 Do you walk?

C2.Yes, I do.

C1.I like to walk.

C2.Because walking is a very good exercise

Conversation 4

C1.Why do you like to walk?

C2.Because walking is a good exercise.

C1.Do you like?

C2.Yes I do.

Conversation 5

C1.What is your village?

C2.YAMO VILLAGE.

C1.How many house in your village?

C2.There are 500 houses in the village.

12. Going to Korat Memorial / Conversations

Basic English 12

Conversation 1

C1.How do you go to Korat Memorial?

C2.I usually go on foot.

C1.Why don't you go by bus?

C2.Korat Memorial is just short walk from my temple.

Conversation 2

C1.Shall we go by bus?

C2.No, we shan't.

C1.We shall walk.

C2.The University is very near my temple.

Conversation 3

C1 Do you walk?

C2.Yes, I do.

C1.I like to walk.

C2.Because walking very good exercise

Conversation 4

C1.Why do you like to walk?

C2.Because walking is a good exercise.

C1.Do you like?

C2.Yes I do.

Conversation 5

C1.What is your temple?

C2.My temple is Wat Pho.

C1.How many monk are the temple?

C2.There are 100 monks in the temple.

13. Going to P- Peat Hospital / Conversations

Basic English 13

Conversation 1

C1.How do you do go to P- Peat Hospital?

C2.I usually go on foot.

C1.Why don't you go by bus?

C2.P Peat Hospital is just short walk from my temple.

Conversation 2

C1.Shall we go by bus?

C2.No, we shan't.

C1.We shall walk.

C2.P Peat Hospital is very near my temple.

Conversation 3

C1 Do you walk?

C2.Yes, I do.

C1.I like to walk.

C2.Because walking is a very good exercise

Conversation 4

C1.Why do you like to walk?

C2.Because walking is a good exercise.

C1.Do you like?

C2.Yes I do.

Conversation 5

C1.What is your temple?

C2.My temple is Wat Boon.

C1.How many monk are in the temple?

C2.There are 70 monks in the temple.

14. Going to Maharaja Hospital / Conversations

Basic English 14

Conversation 1

C1.How do you go to the Maharaja Hospital?

C2.I usually go on foot.

C1.Why don't you go by bus?

C2.The University is just a short walk from my temple.

Conversation 2

C1.Shall we go by bus?

C2.No, we shan't.

C1.We shall walk.

C2.The University is very near my temple.

Conversation 3

C1 Do you walk?

C2.Yes, I do.

C1.I like to walk.

C2.Because walking is a very good exercise

Conversation 4

C1.Why do you like to walk?

C2.Because walking is a good exercise.

C1.Do you like?

C2.Yes I do.

Conversation 5

C1.What is your temple?

C2.My temple is Wat Phayab.

C1.How many monk are in the temple?

C2.There are 25 monks in the temple.

15. Description / Conversations

Basic English 15

Conversation 1

C1. Where do you live?

C2. I live in Ratchasima Temple.

C1. My temple is near the park.

C2. My temple is in the city.

Conversation 2

C1. How many rooms does your temple have?

C2. It has only one floor.

C1. I live in a first floor of my temple.

C2. I live alone?

Conversation 3

C1. How many monks and novice in your temple.

C2. So they are monks in my temple.

C1. Who are your abbot?

C2. Phrasidhamaporn.

Conversation 4

C1. Are you study Pali language?

C2. Yes I do.

C1. What is grade do you study?

C2. I study in 7 grade.

Conversation 5

C1. Have you ever been in another country?

C2. Not yet.

C1. Are you a farmer?

C2. Yes, I am. ♣ ♣ ♣ Look before you leap ♣ ♣ ♣

16. Important Sentences / Conversation

Basic English 16

Conversation 1

C1.How do you do?

C2.I' m please to meet you.

C1.It' s my pleasure to meet you.

C2.Good morning.

Conversation 2

C1.Good afternoon.

C2.Good evening.

C1.Good night.

C2.What' s new?

Conversation 3

C1.What' s happening?

C2.What' s going on?

C1.Anything new?

C2.How' s the world treating you?

Conversation 4

C1.How goes it?

C2.How are you going along?

C1.It' s been along time.

C2.I haven' t seen you for ages.

Conversation 5

C1.Long time no see.

C2.Look like another nice day.

C1.How was your vacation?

C2.Congratulation! Happy Birthday!

17. Important Sentences / Conversation

Basic English 17

Conversation 1

C1. So long.

C2. Be seeing you.

C1. See you later.

C2. Take it easy.

Conversation 2

C1. Take care.

C2. Come back and see us.

C1. Please remember me to your mother.

C2. Say hello to your father for me.

Conversation 3

C1. Have a nice time.

C2. Have a nice trip.

C1. We'll miss you.

C2. Would you excuse me for a moment?

Conversation 4

C1. I must be going now.

C2. I'd better be on my way.

C1. I should leave now.

C2. Thank you very much for your precious time.

Conversation 5

C1. I'm very glad to have met you.

C2. I'm afraid I've taken up a lot of your time.

C1. I hope I didn't overstay my welcome.

C2. It was really nice meeting you.

18. Important Sentence / Conversation

Conversation 1

C1.Thanks.

C2.Thank you.

C1.Thanks a lot.

C2.Much appreciated.

Conversation 2

C1.Much obliged.

C2.How kind of you!

C1.How nice of you!

C2.Thank you for your kindness.

Conversation 3

C1.Thank you for all your kindness.

C2.I can't thank you enough it's very kind of you.

C1.You do all this for me.

C2.I can't find words to tell you how grateful I am to you.

Conversation 4

C1.I have so many things to thank you for.

C2.That's exactly what wanted.

C1.That's what I was waiting for.

C2.I'll treasure it.

Conversation 5

C1.Thank you very much for inviting me.

C2.It's very kind of you to invite me.

C1 Thank you very much for your hospitality.

C2.Thank you for letting me stay with you overnight.

19. Important Sentences / Conversations

Conversation 1

C1. May I have your name again?

C2. I've been looking forward to meeting you.

C1. I've been wanting to know you.

C2. Your name has been to us.

Conversation 2

C1. Thank you very much for your time.

C2. I really appreciate your cooperation.

C1. It's nice of you to see me off.

C2. It's kind of you to see me on such short notice.

Conversation 3

C1. Thank you just the same.

C2. Thank you all the same.

C1. Thank you anyway.

C2. Thank you for asking me.

Conversation 4

C1. Thank you very much for everything.

C2. I want to thank you for everything you've done for me.

C1. I appreciate everything you've done for me.

C2. Thank you for all the trouble you taken.

Conversation 5

C1. Thank you for your trouble.

C2. You've been very helpful.

C1. You've really helped me a lot.

C2. I'm very grateful for your sympathy.

Conversations 1

C1.He cares for nothing but money.

C2.We buy thing with money.

C1.I have enough money for one month' s expenses.

C2.Gold is dearer than silver because is more scarce.

Conversations 2

C1.Are you willing to tend me some money.

C2.I am willing to lend you twelve baths.

C1.This is your money one thousand baths in total.

C2.I have no enough money left to pay you.

Conversations 3

C1.I have enough money left to pay my house rent.

C2.How did you get that money?

C1.I got it by working.

C2.Here is a baht go and have it changed for me.

Conversations 4

C1.He wants to borrow some money from you.

C2.I have had no money for a long time.

C1.When you receive the money you must give me a receipt.

C2.This bank note is counterfeit.

Conversations 5

C1.For what purpose do you want the money?

C2.I want the money to buy books.

C1.I have no money with me.

C2.We should make good use of our money.

21. Meeting / Conversations

Conversation 1

C1.Hello. How are you?

C2.Very well, thanks. And you?

C1.I'm fine, thanks.

C2.It's good to see you again.

Conversation 2

C1.What have you been doing lately?

C2.I've been busy with extra work.

C1.I've had a lot of work to do too.

C2.Yes. I haven't seen you for quite a while either.

Conversation 3

C1.Hello. How's every thing?

C2.Fine, thanks. How about you?

C1.Just fine. What's new?

C2.Nothing much.

Conversation 4

C1.I'm pleased to meet you.

C2.The pleasure is mine.

C2.Only good things, I hope.

Conversation 5

C1.Look who's here !

C2.Are you surprised to see me?

C1.Ha!. I thought you were in Europe.

C2.I was, but I got back yesterday.

♣ ♣ ♣ Do not marry money ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C1. When was the University Established?

C2. Where is the Mahachula, University?

C1. Mahachula, University is in Wat mahadhatu.

C2. Mahachula, is a Buddhist University.

Conversation 2

C1. Is Mahachula, a Buddhist University?

C2. Yes, Mahachula, is a Buddhist University?

C1. When was Mahachula, established?

C2. Mahachula, was established in B.E 2435/1995.

Conversation 3

C1. How many years has the University been opened?

C2. Is the University only opened for monk and novice too?

C1. Yes, it is open for monk and novice only.

C2. How many monks and novice for a year?

Conversation 4

C1. 3,000 Monks and novice for a years.

C2. Who is chancellor of University?

C1. Phrarajavoramuni is Chancellor of University.

C2. And so many monks vice-chancellor.

Conversation 5

C1. How we can enter the University?

C2. We can go into the University by entrance.

C1. How many faculty in the University.

C2. They are four faculty of the University?

♣ ♣ ♣ At the gate where suspicion enters love goes out. ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

- C1. The University Watsrisudaram Campus.
- C2. The University NakornRatchasima Campus.
- C1. The University Khonkhean Campus.
- C2. The University Ubol Campus.

Conversation 2

- C1. The University Nongkai Campus.
- C2. The University Chaingmai Campus.
- C1. The University NakornSridhamrat Campus.
- C2. The University NakornPhrathom Campus.

Conversations 3

- C1. The University Nakornswan Campus.
- C2. The University Phayao Campus.
- C1. The University Lio et Campus.
- C2. The University Nakornphanom Campus.

Conversation 4

- C1. And five pre Pali University.
- C2. There are three pre pali in Bangkok.
- C1. One in Nakornsudhamrat .
- C2. And one in Mahasarakham.

Conversations 5

- C1. How many faculty in NakornRatchasima Campus?
- C2. There are four faculties in NakornRatchasima Campus .
- C1. Who is vice -Chancellor in NakornRatchasima Campus?
- C2. Phrasi Dhammaporn is Vice - Chancellor.

♣ ♣ ♣ All love needs is two people ♣ ♣ ♣

24. First meeting / Conversations

Conversation 1

C1.Hello how are you today?

C2 I am fine thank you.

C1.Can you tell me your name please?

C2. My name is Phramaha deshavad.

Conversation 2

C1. Where do you come from?

C2. I come from Buri Rum Province.

C1. Are you a farmer?

C2. Yes, I am a farmer.

Conversation 3

C1. Are you monk or novice?

C2. I am a monk.

C1. How old are you?

C2. I'm 25 years old.

Conversation 4

C1.Where are you staying now?

C2.I am staying in wat nong phai.

C1.How far from here?

C2. About four kilometers from here.

Conversation 5

C1.How long have you been a monk?

C2.Five years.

C1.How long have you been there?

C2.I come two years ago.

25. Parting / Conversations

Conversation 1

C1.Well, I have an appointment now.

C2.I'm in quite a hurry too.

C1.Good to see you. Good-bye.

C2.Good-bye. take care of yourself.

Conversation 2

C1.I guess I'd better go now.

C2.I've got to be going now too.

C1.In that case, I'll be seeing you.

C2.So long. see you later.

Conversation 3

C1.It's getting late, and I have to go now.

C2.We're sorry you have to leave?

C1.Please excuse me, won't you?

C2.Certainly. Come back soon.

Conversation 4

C1.I'm glad to have met you.

C2.Thank you. it was nice to have seen you.

C1.I hope we can get together again.

C2.Yes. I'll be looking forward to it.

Conversation 5.

C1.I think I have to leave now.

C2.Must you go so soon?

C1.I'm afraid I really have to.

C2.Well, it was fun to get together again.

♣ ♣ ♣ Don't get married with the one you love ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C1.Do you speak English?

C2.Only a little, and not very well.

C1.Do you know many words?

C2.No, I don't. Only the important words.

Conversation 2

C1.Does your brother speak English?

C2.Well, he speaks a little English.

C1.Do your sisters speak English?

C2.Yes, they do. They speak it very well.

Conversation 3

C1.Can I help you?

C2.Yes. I speak only English.

C1.I'm sorry, but I don't understand English.

C2.Please find someone who speaks English.

Conversation 4

C1.What's the matter?

C2.I don't speak English.

C1.Do you need women kind of help?

C2.Yes, but I can't explain it in English.

Conversation 5

C1.Do you think English is easy?

C2.No, I don't.

C1.Why don't you think so?

C2.Because I don't understand it.

♣ ♣ ♣ Love makes man either better or worse ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C1.What time do you get up?

C2.I get up about seven fifteen.

C1.What time is breakfast at your house?

C2.Breakfast is always at a quarter to eight.

Conversation 2

C1.What do you usually do in the afternoon?

C2.We usually study or read.

C1.What do you generally do over the weekend?

C2.We generally enjoy sports and visit friends.

Conversation 3

C1.Do you ever go to museums?

C2.I go every now and then.

C1.What kinds of things do you like to see?

C2.I enjoy seeing statues and old paintings.

Conversation 4

C1.Do you watch television very often?

C2.Well, I sometimes watch it in the evening.

C1.Did you watch television last night?

C2.Yes, I did. I saw several good programs.

Conversation 5

C1.Do you ever listen to the radio?

C2.Certainly In fact, I listen practically every night.

C1.What's your favorite program?

C2.I like the eleven O'clock theater Best of all.

♣ ♣ ♣ Sex control the world ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C1. When did you eat lunch today?

C2. I ate from twelve to one.

C1. Where did you have your lunch?

C2. I had it at Suave Sue's restaurant today.

Conversation 2

C1. Did you have a good time at the party?

C2. We had a wonderful time.

C1. It was really a lot of fun.

C2. We ought to have another party like that soon.

Conversation 3

C1. Do you ever go to the museums?

C2. I go every now and then.

C1. What kinds of things do you like to see?

C2. I enjoy seeing statues and old paintings.

Conversation 4

C1. Do you watch television very often?

C2. Well, sometimes watch it in the evening.

C1. Did you watch television last night?

C2. Yes I did. I saw several good programs.

Conversation 5

C1. Do you ever listen to the?

C2. Certainly. In fact, I listen practical every night.

C1. What's your favorite program?

C2. I like the eleven O'clock theater best of all.

♣ ♣ ♣ Get married with the who love you ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

- C1. Where did you go after lunch?
C2. I went to the public library.
C1. Which one did you go to?
C2. I went to the one at 42nd street.

Conversation 2

- C1. What did you do last night?
C2. I watched television.
C1. Where did you watch it ?
C2. I watched it here in the recreation room.

Conversation 3

- C1. Was that television program interesting?
C2. I thought it was very boring.
C1. What did your friends think of it?
C2. They were bored too.

Conversation 4

- C1. I went to a lecture last night.
C2. What was it about?
C1. Society and modern art.
C2. I wish I'd gone with you.

Conversation 5

- C1. We went to the movies the night before last.
C2. What did you see?
C1. We saw a film about cowboys and England.
C2. Don't you ever get tired of those westerns?

♣ ♣ ♣ Love me little, but love me long ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C1. Where have you been?

C2. I've been to the movies.

C1. What did you see?

C2. I saw an Indian movie about life in India.

Conversation 2

C1. What places have you seen so far?

C2. I've been to almost all the museums.

C1. Have you gone to any parks yet?

C2. No, I haven't. I haven't had enough time for that.

Conversation 3

C1. Let's meet at your house tonight.

C2. O.K. That sounds fine.

C1. I've forgotten how to get to your house.

C2. Just take the Nakiri Street bus to Brindawan garden.

Conversation 4

C1. Let's watch television for a while.

C2. All right, but let's finish this work first.

C1. Oh, let's not do the work right now.

C2. You're just lazy, in my opinion.

Conversation 5

C1. I can't hear the television set.

C2. Why don't you sit closer?

C1. I'm right beside it now.

C2. Why don't you turn up the volume?

♣ ♣ ♣ Love rules without sword ♣ ♣ ♣

31. Evening Activities / Conversations.

Conversation 1

C1.Let's go the movies tonight.

C2.Fine. I don't have anything else to do.

C1.What would you like to see?

C2.Why don't we look in the movie section of the newspaper?

Conversation 2

C1.Where are you going tonight?

C2.I'm going to the political rally for Mr.Somsak.

C1.Sounds interesting. Can we go with you?

C2.Certainly. Meet me here at eight fifteen.

Conversation 3

C1.Would you like to go to the concert with me tonight?

C2.Yes. Thank you very much.

C1.Would you like to go at about eight o'clock.

C2.That would be fine.

Conversation 4

C1.What are you going to do tonight?

C2.I haven't decided yet.

C1.Would you like to go to the movies?

C2.Can I call you and tell you later?

Conversation 5

C1.Would you like to go to the movies tonight?

C2.I'd rather stay home and watch television.

C1.Are there going to be any good programs tonight?

C2.Yes. There's going to be a good play on channel four.

♣ ♣ ♣ Money is the new of love ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

E1. Take your seat, please.

A2. All aboard, please.

E1. Biscuit.

A2. Cracker.

Conversation 2

E1. Trousers.

A2. Pants.

E1. By-pass.

A2. Cut-off.

Conversation 3

E1. Underground.

A2. Subway.

E1. Derby.

A2. Derby.

Conversation 4

E1. Lift.

A2. Elevator.

E1. Petrol.

A2. Gasoline.

Conversation 5

E1. Match.

A2. Game.

E1. Ground floor.

A2. First floor.

Conversation 1

E1.Christian name

A2.First name.

E1.Surname.

A2.Second name.

Conversation 2

E1.Fix.

A2. Fix.

E1. Hire purchase.

A2. Installment.

Conversation 3

E1.File.

A2.File.

E1.Tap.

A2. Faucet.

Conversation 4

E1. Autumn.

A2. Fall.

E1. Express delivery.

A2. Express delivery.

Conversation 5

E1. Chemist's shop.

A2. Drug store.

E1. Cooking stove.

A2. Cookstove.

Conversation 1

E1.Company.

A2.Corporation.

E1.Fresh.

A2.Fresh.

Conversation 2

E1.Gun.

A2.Pistol.

E1.What can I do for you?

A2.May I help you?

Conversation 3

E1.I am sure.

A2.I guess.

E1.Do you want to go with me?

A2.Want you go with me?

Conversation 4

E1.Would you mind?

A2.Would you care?

E1.Entrance.

A2.Entry.

Conversations 1

C1.What is your dress made of?

C2.My dress is made of cotton.

C1.My coat is made of cotton too.

C2.This is my new outfit.

Conversations 2

C1.May I put on new outfit?

C2.Hang up my cloths.

C1.Give me the coat.

C2.I only change when I go out.

Conversations 3

C1.Get dressed.

C2.Have you taken the clothes to my friend Mr. Somsak?

C1.Yes, I have given there to him.

C2.The sleeves are too high.

Conversations 4

C1.Has the tailor brought your clothes.

C2.He has brought them to me.

C1.Get this shirt mended.

C2.Clean my boots.

Conversations 5

C1.Go and fetch my shore.

C2.The trousseau are too long.

C1.These clothes are necessary for me.

C2.Take these clothes out at ours and air them.

Conversation Drill 1

C1. Please sit down and talk to me.

C2. Are you (A) ?

C1. Yes, I am. What are you doing ?

C2. At the moment, I'm (B) .

(A)

typing a letter

painting a picture

reading the paper

watching television

listening to a record

working on something

writing a report

solving a puzzle

(B)

looking for someone

just walking around

waiting for a friend

just resting a bit

getting ready for dinner

doing my work

practicing English with you

relaxing for a few minutes

Conversation Drill 2

C1. What do you want to do tonight ?

C2. Would you like to (A) ?

C1. That would be nice.

C2. There's a good (B) .

(A)

watch television

go bowling with us

see a movie

listen to the radio

attend a concert

hear some folk music

go to a play

(B)

program on channel 3

bowling alley nearby

show at the corner theater

comedy on station

orchestra at the auditorium

group of musicians at the Star Club

which just opened

37. How Do I Get There? / Conversation Drills.

Conversation Drill A

C.1 Excuse me. Where's (A)?

C.2 It's (B)

C.1 Thank you for the help

C.2 Thanks all right.

(A)

(B)

The rest room

down the hall

The post office

around the corner

The bus terminal in the next block

The ticket office

beside the main entrance

Conversation drill B

C.1 Where's the (A)?

C.2 It's on this floor.

C.1 How can I get there from here?

A.2 (B)

(A)

(B)

Reception desk

Turn left right over there.

Main office

Walk straight ahead.

Cafeteria

Go in second door on the right.

Cashiers window

Just walk to the end of this hall.

Conversation Drill C

C.1 How do I get to the train station?

C.2 Turn left (A)

C.1 How far is it (B)?

C.2 It's about a quarter of a mile.

at the second stoplight

to the stoplight

in the center of town

to the center

at the next intersection

to the intersection

at main street

to main street

Conversation Drill 1

- .1 I understand the American money C system well.
- C.2 The how many ----(A)----are there in a ___(B)___?
- C.1 There are ___(C)___,aren't there?
- C.2 That's exactly right There are ___(C)___.

(A)	(B)	(C)
cents	nickel	five
cents	dime	ten
nickels	dime	two
cents	quarter	twenty-five
nickels	quarter	five
quarters	half dollar	two
dimes	half dollar	five
quarters	dollar	four
nickels	dollar	twenty

Conversation Drill B

- C.1 What do you need today?
- C.2 I'd like _____(A)_____
- C.1 Today _____(B)_____
- C.2 That'll be all right, Thanks.

(A)	(B)
a pound of butter	butter is 650 a pound
a quarter of milk	milk is 380 a quart
a loaf of bread	bread is 200 a loaf
a can of tuna fish	tuna is 850 a can
a are of jelly	jelly is 360 a jar
a box of cookies	cookies are 420 a box
a pint of cream	cream is 410 a pint
a dozen eggs	eggs are 870 a dozen

Conversation 1

C1. I saw them about yesterday.

C2. Did they (A) you _____ it

C1. Well, they(B) it

C2. I suppose that.

Conversation 2

(A)	(B)
blame.....for	complained about
advice.....of	commented on
encourage.....in	inquired about
remind.....of	referred to
question.....about	spoke about
pay.....for	consented to
assist.....with	argued about

Conversation Drill 3

C 1.He's going to see them tomorrow.

C2. Do you think he'll (A) them _____ that?

C1. He certainly ought to (B) it _____ them.

C2. At any rate, he has to do something

(A)	(B)
consult.....about	explain.....to
threaten.....with	suggest.....to
caution.....about	emphasize..to
excuse.....from	require.....of
provide.....with	share.....with
trust.....with	offer.....to
advise.....of	conceal.....from.

Conversation 1

C1. Somsak is very popular with his employees

C2. Yes, he is. He's always been fair to them.

C1. I know he always seems to be aware of other people's problems.

C2. I think that's why he's been so successful in his work.

Conversation 2

C1. How do you like your new teacher?

C2. Very well He's always patient with us.

C1. Doesn't he ever get angry with his students?

C2. No, He never seems to get upset over anything.

Conversation 3

C1. My secretary is very efficient in everything she does.

C2. You're lucky. Secretaries aren't always careful about their work.

C1. Right. My former secretary was often neglectful of thing.

C2. Well, I advise you to be very courteous to your new one.

Conversation 4

C1. Are you optimistic about the results of the examination?

C2. To be truthful about it I'm really not.

C1. I'm not very confident of getting a good grade either.

C2. I guess it's no use be so anxious about it now.

Conversation 5

C1. My boss has been critical of my work lately.

C2. Has your recent work been consistent with your previous work.

C1. If anything, I'd say it's been superior to my previous work.

C2. Then maybe he's resentful of you for some other reason.

Conversation 1

C1. What did the men say about the new secretary.

C2. Apparently, she's working hard.

C1. In your opinion, is she (B) the things she must do?

C2. I would certainly say she is

(A)	(B)
capable	skillful at
fond of	proficient in
not afraid of	suitable for
desirous of	efficient in
intent on	careful about
not resentful of	adequate for
amenable to	aware of

Conversation Drill 2

C1. What's your opinion of our new president?

C2. I like him because he's (A) other people.

C1. He's certainly (B) everyone.

C2. Obviously, he's a fine person for the job.

(A)	(B)
always considerate	polite to
never critical	gentle with
never rude to	cooperative with
always respectful of	popular with
never hostile to ward	truthful with
always courteous to	generous with

Conversation 1

C1. What sports are you interested in?

C2. Well, I get quite excited about football.

C1. Do you get absorbed in games on TV as my brother does?

C2. I'm afraid I do. Almost every weekend.

Conversation 2

C1. Is something the matter?

C2. Well, I'm concerned about my job.

C1. Is it related to all the recent changes?

C2. Yes, I'm having trouble getting adjusted to my new duties.

Conversation 3

C1. Are you accustomed to the climate here yet?

C2. Not really. I get tired of the constant rain.

C1. You certainly can't be blamed for that.

C2. I'll really be glad when the spring comes.

Conversation 4

C1. Are you acquainted with that man over there?

C2. Yes, I'm associated with him in my work.

C1. I enjoyed talking to him very much.

C2. I'm not surprised at that. He's very charming.

Conversation 5

C1. Did you get involved in the argument at the meeting?

C2. Yes. I didn't want to be accused of not having an opinion.

C1. I got very annoyed over several things that Harold said.

C2. To tell the truth, I was very disappointed with him.

Conversation 1

C1. Somsak seemed to become nervous when he noticed the time.

C2. He spoke nervously too. I thought

C1. I noticed he made a quick departure afterward.

C2. Yes, He did leave rather quickly didn't he?

Conversation 2

C1. Is the director a well educated man?

C2. Yes, he has a good education.

C1. Is he a very efficient person on the job.

C2. Yes, he always seems to do things efficiently.

Conversation 3

C1. Was the man angry?

C2. Yes, he should very angry at us.

C1. Were people calm about it or not?

C1. Most of us took it quite calmly.

Conversation 4

C1. Helen is a calm person.

C2. I've noticed she always speaks calmly.

C1. She also seems sensible about things.

C2. Yes. She always handles things sensibly, in my opinion.

Conversation 5

C1. Mr. Suksan looked anxious don't you think?

C2. Yes. He was pacing the floor anxiously when I saw him.

C1. Is he always so emotional about making speeches?

C2. Yes. He gets very involved and emotional.

Conversation 2

C1. Does suksan always speak rapidly?

C2. Usually but not when he makes speeches.

C1. He's good speaker, and his pronunciation is excellent.

C2. He does pronounce words well, doesn't he?

Conversation 2

C1. Was the president completely satisfied with the results?

C2. Yes, he was expressed complete satisfaction.

C1. Did he announce the results of our work formally?

C2. Yes, he did made a formal announcement.

Conversation 3

C1. Did you consider everything impartially?

C2. Yes, I tried to give everything very impartial consideration.

C1. You treated the matter cautiously, I see.

C2. Well. It definitely called for cautious treatment.

Conversation 4

C1. Did the chairman make a recommendation to oppose changes?

C2. Yes, and he recommended opposition to the new proposal.

C1. Was there any criticism of the proposal?

C2. Yes, some people criticized it and proposed further study.

Conversation 5

C1. The boys behaved badly and deserved punishment.

C2. After the party, their parents punished them for their bad behavior.

C1. Did they apologize for their rude remarks?

C2. Yes, They made an apology for having spoken so rudely.

Conversation 1

- C1. I tried to instruct Suksan how to get there.
C2. Did he understand your instructions?
C1. Well, I described every place along the way in detail.
C2. Then I'm sure your description made everything clear.

Conversation 2

- C1. Did you see the demonstration of that new product?
C2. Yes, but it was demonstrated in a different building.
C1. Did the change in plans confuse people?
C2. Fortunately, there seemed to be very little confusion.

Conversation 3

- C1. Somsak decided not to say anything about his good luck.
C2. I think he made a wise decision Don't think you?
C1. Definitely I admire him for it too.
C2. Without question, he deserves a great deal of admiration.

Conversation 4

- C1. We just recently agreed on a course of action.
C2. What brought this agreement?
C1. We investigated and concluded it was necessary.
C2. I came to the conclusion after some investigation.

Conversation 5

- C1. My friend selected everything he needed very quickly.
C2. But his selection were quite good, I thought.
C1. How could he choose things so quickly?
C2. I don't know but his choices were all very good.

Conversation 1

C1. Didn't Alice seem anxious about taking the examination?

C2. Yes, She seemed to have a great deal of anxiety about it.

C1. But she's the most intelligent student in the class?

C2. I guess intelligence and anxiety aren't directly related.

Conversation 2

C1. Fred seems to be a very sincere and ambitious person.

C2. Yes, I admire his sincerity and ambition a great deal.

C1. I suspect some people are envious of his success.

C2. Well. I'm sure successful people get quite accustomed to envy.

Conversation 3

C1. Did Bill's humorous comments amuse everyone.

C2. Yea, they did He's very clever, isn't he?

C1. Yes, and he has a good sense of humor.

C2. I think everyone enjoyed his cleverness and humor.

Conversation 4

C1. We are very grateful for all your generosity.

C2. You're very kind to express your gratitude.

C1. Well, you were very generous, and we wanted to thank you.

C2. And I have appreciated your kindness.

Conversation 5

C1. Did your friend give you an accurate description of the event?

C2. Yes, in fact their accuracy was very impressive.

C1. They're always very competent and reliable in things like that.

C2. Competence and reliability are important qualities in our work.

Conversation 1

C1. I've got to go to the train station.

C2. What do you have to go for?

C1. To meet my cousin from Bangkok.

C2. Let me take you in my car.

Conversation 2

C1. Did you get to the station on time?

C2. We did, but we were almost late.

C1. How close was it?

C2. We got on the train just as it was starting.

Conversation 3

C1. Did your cousin arrive on time?

C2. No. He was an hour late.

C1. Did you meet him at the station?

C2. I was right there on the platform when the train came.

Conversation 4

C1. Where's my bag?

C2. Here it is.

C1. Where's my briefcase?

C2. There it is-over there.

Conversation 5

C1. Do you have your suitcases?

C2. I've got one of them with me.

C1. Where are the rest of them?

C2. I checked my two other ones at the baggage room.

♣ ♣ ♣ Love comes with pity ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C1.How do you get home every day?

C2.I take the commuter train to West sport.

C1.Isn't it rather expensive going by train ?

C2.No. I buy a twenty-trip commuter ticket each month.

Conversation 2

C1.Can you give me some information?

C2.You're at the right place.

C1.I want to go to Bangkok.

C2.The next train leaves at four thirty.

Conversation 3

C1.How soon does the train leave?

C2.It leaves in ten minutes.

C1.Do I have time to check my bags?

C2.I don't think you do.

Conversation 4

C1.At what time does the next train leave for the city?

C2.There's one at four and another at four forty-five.

C1.What's the fare?

C2.It's eight fifty including tax.

Conversation 5

C1.How much is the fare to Korat?

C2.A hundred fifty dollars round trip.

C1.What time does the next train leave?

C2.The next one leaves at six thirty on track 31.

♣ ♣ ♣ All is fair in love and war ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C1. Where will you meet your friends?

C2. I'll meet them at the airport.

C1. When will they get there?

C2. I don't know yet.

Conversation 2

C1. When are you meeting your friends?

C2. I'm meeting them at eight o'clock tomorrow night.

C1. How are they getting here?

C2. They're coming by air.

Conversation 3

C1. Is this Bangkok Airlines?

C2. Yes. May I help you?

C1. Can you tell me when flight 439 will arrive?

C2. One moment, Please. I'll check.

Conversation 4

C1. All the incoming flights are listed on that board.

C2. I see they expect Bill's flight to be twenty minutes late.

C1. Do they have an arrival gate listed?

C2. No. They'll probably list it about ten minutes before arrival.

Conversation 5

C1. Well! How was your trip?

C2. It was very smooth and fast.

C1. Could you see the mountains from the plane?

C2. Yes. The visibility was excellent all the way.

♣ ♣ ♣ Love conquers all ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C1. At what time does the next plane to Bangkok leave?

C2. The next one is flight 12 at eleven fifty-five.

C1. What's the next one after that?

C2. Flight 21 at one or five

Conversation 2

C1. How often is there a flight to Korat?

C2. We have flights to Korat every hour.

C1. Are they nonstop flights?

C2. Yes. Direct to Korat.

Conversation 3

C1. Could I make a reservation for flight ten to Tokyo?

C2. I'm sorry, but everything is taken.

C1. How about the next flight-tomorrow at two o'clock?

C2. Yes. I can give you a reservation on that.

Conversation 4

C1. I'd like to check in for the flight to Bangkok.

C2. Fine. Do you have your ticket and passport?

C1. Yes. Here's my ticket, and I'll get out my passport.

C2. Would you please put your baggage on the scale?

Conversation 5

C1. How long is the flight from Bangkok to Korat?

C2. Well, supposedly an hour, but it's sometimes longer.

C1. How often are there flights to Korat from Bangkok?

C2. There's one every hour.

♣ ♣ ♣ Food season by love will please anyone ♣ ♣ ♣

51. Getting to the Hotel / Conversations

Advanced English 51

Conversation 1

C1.What's a good hotel in this town?

C2.The Iyara Hotel is good.

C1.How far is it from here?

C2.It's quite close-about four blocks.

Conversation 2

C1.Where are you staying?

C2.We're staying at The Iyara hotel.

C1.What's the name of the hotel?

C2.The iyara Hotel.

Conversation 3

C1.How long will you be in NakornRatchasima?

C2.I'll be here about two weeks.

C1.Where are you going to stay?

C2.I'm going to stay at the Iyara Hotel.

Conversation 4

C1.I'd like a single room, please.

C2.Do you want a room with a bath?

C1.Yes, please. Do you have one?

C2.Yes, we have one at ten dollars a day.

Conversation 5

C1.I have a reservation for a room here

C2.Yes, You're in room 341 on the third floor.

C1.Can I take the elevator over there?

C2.Yes, and turn right when you get off the elevator.

♣ ♣ ♣ From seeing comes love ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C1. Where's the hotel, please?

C2. It's on Main Street.

C1. Where's that?

C2. It's the next street straight ahead.

Conversation 2

C1. Can you tell me where the hotel is?

C2. It's in the next block.

C1. On this side or the other side?

C2. This side. Straight ahead of you.

Conversation 3

C1. I want to the Sripatna Hotel.

C2. Do you have a map?

C1. Yes, I do. here it is.

C2. The hotel is right there-at that intersection.

Conversation 4

C1. Excuse me. I'm lost.

C2. Where do you live?

C1. I live at the Sripatna Hotel.

C2. The Sripatna Hotel is two blocks that way.

Conversation 5

C1. Can you help me, please?

C2. What's the matter?

C1. Where's the Sripatna Hotel on this map?

C2. It's right here right next to the train station.

♣ ♣ ♣ Soon ripe, soon rotten ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C1.What's a good hotel in this town?

C2.The Royal Princess Hotel is good.

C1.How far is it from here?

C2.It's quite close-about four blocks.

Conversation 2

C1.Where are you staying?

C2.We're staying at Royal Princess Hotel.

C1.What's the name of the hotel?

C2.The Royal Princess Hotel.

Conversation 3

C1.How long will you be in NakornRatchasima?

C2.I'll be here about two weeks.

C1.Where are you going to stay?

C2.I'm going to stay at the Royal Princes Hotel.

Conversation 4

C2.Yes, You're in room 251 on the third floor.

C1. Can I take the elevator over there?

C2. Yes, and turn right when you get off the elevator

C1. Ok thank you..

Conversation 5

C1.I have a reservation for a room here

C2.Yes, You're in room 341 on the third floor.

C1.Can I take the elevator over there?

C2.Yes, and turn right when you get off the elevator.

♣ ♣ ♣ From seeing comes love ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C1.What's a good hotel in this town?

C2.The Sima Thani Hotel is good.

C1.How far is it from here?

C2.It's quite close-about four blocks.

Conversation 2

C1.Where are you staying?

C2.We're staying at sima Thani hotel.

C1.What's the name of the hotel?

C2.The Sima Thani Hotel.

Conversation 3

C1.How long will you be in NakornRatchasima?

C2.I'll be here about two weeks.

C1.Where are you going to stay?

C2.I'm going to stay at the Sima Thani Hotel.

Conversation 4

C1.I'd like a single room, please.

C2.Do you want a room with a bath?

C1.Yes, please, do you have one?

C2.Yes, We have one at ten dollars a day.

Conversation 5

C1.I have a reservation for a room here

C2.Yes, you're in room 344 on the third floor.

C1.Can I take the elevator over there?

C2.Yes, and turn right when you get off the elevator.

♣ ♣ ♣ From seeing comes love ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C1.What's a good hotel in this town?

C2.The Jomphol Hotel is good.

C1.How far is it from here?

C2.It's quite close-about four blocks.

Conversation 2

C1.Where are you staying?

C2.We're staying at Jomphol hotel.

C1.What's the name of the hotel?

C2.The Jomphol Hotel.

Conversation 3

C1.How long will you be in NakornRatchasima?

C2.I'll be here about two weeks.

C1.Where are you going to stay?

C2.I'm going to stay at the Jomphol Hotel.

Conversation 4

C1.I'd like a single room, please.

C2.Do you want a room with a bath?

C1.Yes, please, do you have one?

C2.Yes, we have one at ten dollars a day.

Conversation 5

C1.I have a reservation for a room here

C2.Yes, You're in room 333 on the third floor.

C1.Can I take the elevator over there?

C2.Yes, and turn right when you get off the elevator.

♣ ♣ ♣ From seeing comes love ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C1.What's a good hotel in this town?

C2.The Most Hotel is good.

C1.How far is it from here?

C2.It's quite close-about four blocks.

Conversation 2

C1.Where are you staying?

C2.We're staying at Most Hotel.

C1.What's the name of the hotel?

C2.The Most Hotel.

Conversation 3

C1.How long will you be in Nakornratchasima?

C2.I'll be here about two weeks.

C1.Where are you going to stay?

C2.I'm going to stay at the Most Hotel.

Conversation 4

C1.I'd like a single room, please.

C2.Do you want a room with a bath?

C1.Yes, please, do you have one?

C2.Yes, We have one at ten dollars a day.

Conversation 5

C1.I have a reservation for a room here

C2.Yes, You're in room 245 on the third floor.

C1.Can I take the elevator over there?

C2.Yes, and turn right when you get off the elevator.

♣ ♣ ♣ From seeing comes love ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C1.What's a good hotel in this town?

C2.The Best Hotel is good.

C1.How far is it from here?

C2.It's quite close-about four blocks.

Conversation 2

C1.Where are you staying?

C2.We're staying at Best Hotel.

C1.What's the name of the hotel?

C2.The Best Hotel.

Conversation 3

C1.How long will you be in NakornRatchasima?

C2.I'll be here about two weeks.

C1.Where are you going to stay?

C2.I'm going to stay at the Best Hotel.

Conversation 4

C1.I'd like a single room, please.

C2.Do you want a room with a bath?

C1.Yes, please, do you have one?

C2.Yes, We have one at ten dollars a day.

Conversation 5

C1.I have a reservation for a room here

C2.Yes, You're in room 881 on the third floor.

C1.Can I take the elevator over there?

C2.Yes, and turn right when you get off the elevator.

♣ ♣ ♣ From seeing comes love ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C1.What's a good hotel in this town?

C2.The Royal Hotel is good.

C1.How far is it from here?

C2.It's quite close-about four blocks.

Conversation 2

C1.Where are you staying?

C2.We're staying at Royal Hotel.

C1.What's the name of the hotel?

C2.The Royal Hotel.

Conversation 3

C1.How long will you be in NakornRatchasima?

C2.I'll be here about two weeks.

C1.Where are you going to stay?

C2.I'm going to stay at the Royal Hotel.

Conversation 4

C1.I'd like a single room, please.

C2.Do you want a room with a bath?

C1.Yes, please, do you have one?

C2.Yes, we have one at ten dollars a day.

Conversation 5

C1.I have a reservation for a room here

C2.Yes, You're in room 993 on the third floor.

C1.Can I take the elevator over there?

C2.Yes, and turn right when you get off the elevator.

♣ ♣ ♣ From seeing comes love ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C1. Look ! What is that building?

C2. Which one, Sir?

C1. Over there.

C2. That is the Grand palace.

Conversation 2

C1. Oh! How beautiful it is!

C2. Is it the place where the King and the Queen lives.

C1. No, our present King and Queen did not live there.

C2. Where do they live?

Conversation 3

C1. They live in Chitralada Palace.

C2. And what is that building?

C1. That is the Fine department, Sir

C2. Now, let us go to see the temple of the Emerald Buddha.

Conversation 4

C1. I hope you will enjoy seeing the temple.

C2. Because there are many beautiful things.

C1. Can I take some pictures there?

C2. Certainly, you can.

Conversation 5

C1. What is that?

C2. That is the model of Angkor Wat.

C1. Have you some pictures of the temple?

C2. Sure, I have many good views of the pagodas.

60.To visit the national Museum / Conversations

Advanced English 60

Conversation 1

C1. We are going to visit the Emerald Buddha temple

C2. That is a good idea.

C1. Are you interested in archeology .

C2. Yes. I am shall I have time to visit the national museum?

Conversation 2

C1. Surely, you have plenty of time.

C2. Is it still open now?

C1. Yes, it is.

C2. How long does the museum stay open?

Conversation 3

C1. It will be closed at 4.00 p.m.

C2. What can I see in the museum?

C1. Oh. You can see interesting they of gone days.

C2. Any they're a lot of there?

Conversation 4

C1. Yes, I think that the whale day is not enough to see all of them.

C2. Really?

C1. Yes, from there you can study the oldest Thai people.

C2. Oh, I have to see it very much.

Conversation 5

C1. Any there some porcelain vases distress and plates?

C2. Why not? You can see a lot of them.

C1. And you can see all of periods dating back to antiquity.

C2. And then you can visiting the National Library.

Conversation 1

- C1. So woman who wish to be ordained have a similar aims as men.
- C2. That is hope to obtain from evil and to practice for purity and peacefulness of body.
- C1. What is different between cheebam or Sila carini
- C2. These two words have a meaning which is a little bit different from “Chee”

Conversation 2

- C1. The meaning of Cheebam or Silacarini is than Chee.
- C2. This is because although both wear white robes a chee and a cheebam.
- C1. Cheebrahm or siracarini look different because the latter has here hair and eye-brows shaved.
- C2. Most of them will wear the robes for a short period of time.

Conversation 3

- C1. To cultivate renunciation or to give up the mundane world and to observe the Dhamma.
- C2. To train the Loral for peacefulness of body and mind.
- C1. To study the teaching of the Buddha to practice and knowledge
- C2. To cultivate wisdom right understanding futurity and harmony.

Conversation 4

- C1. Who wished to be ordained needs to contact the monk in service or the abbot of a temple.
- C2. More one should understand the rules for meditation practitioners first.
- C1. A new Buddhist nun should practice meditation and observe the precepts.
- C2. One the other those that are needed are as follows

Conversation 5

- C1. One has to say the words asking to be ordained by oneself.
- C2. One has to ask for sila (rules of moral conduct) by oneself.
- C1. One has to recite the sila by oneself clearly
- C2. So one needs to study this before hand.

Conversation 1

C1. Visakha puja day is one of the greatest religious holidays

C2. The holidays which falls on the 15th. Day of waxing moon in the 6th lunar month.

C1. The significant celebration is held to commemorate the Buddha's birth, enlightenment and death.

C2. In Thailand as a Buddhist country with his Majesty the king as the upholder of all religions.

Conversation 2

C1. This auspicious day is celebrated throughout the country.

C2. Religious flags are flown.

C1. Religious ceremonies and writing are performed countryside.

C2. The people will wake up in the early morning to prepare food and sweets for monks.

Conversation 3

C1. At dawn they walk a long line to the nearby temple.

C2. Where they will spend the greater part of the day in the religious activities.

C1. The activities are usually centered around the temple.

C2. Where they attend sermons during the day and in the evening.

Conversation 4

C1. They will take part in the candle-like procession that circumambulates the main chapel three times.

C2. In the procession each person carries flowers.

C1. They carry incense sticks and a lighted candle in remembrance of the Triple Gems.

C2. On this occasion, a grand religious ceremony is also held at Phut Tha Monthon.

Conversation 5

C1. Where is the statue of the walking Buddha located.

C2. Here the candle-lit procession is usually led by a member of the Royal family.

C1. Buddhists from nearby and other provinces come to take part in the procession.

C2. They may take the time to purify their mind through the practice of meditation.

Conversation 1

C1. The main sanctuary reveal that the all the external lynchets including involve the Hinduism

C2. The carving of Ramayana stay figures of Hindu gods like Shiva and Vishnu.

C1. The religious art of Mahayana Buddhism.

C2. Through it can be concluded that Phimai Sanctuary was build for worship.

Conversation 2

C1. Trilokayavichaya Buddhism is standing on Hindu god Shiva.

C2. Two stone inscription encountered.

C1. The first mentions the name of king Suriyavoraman one

C2. At the door frame of the saunterne gallery describing the name of king chaivaraman one

Conversation 3

C1. These inscriptions of different period also coincides with the characteristics of the artifacts.

¹C2. The Phimai sanctuary may have been in between late eleventh to twelfth th centuries.

C1. Pimai Historical park opens everyday?

C2. Yes, Phimai Historical park opens everyday from 06.00-18.00

Conversation 4

C1. How much I will pay a ticket?

C2. Admission free is 40 baht for person.

C2. Thank you very much.

Conversation 5

C1. Hello, are you guide?

C2. Yes, I am a guide.

C1. Do you have time today? C2. Yes, I had.

Conversation 1

C1. Where is the Phimai National Museum?

C2. Phimai National Museum is situated on Tha Songkran Road.

C1. How far from Prasat Hin Phimai?

C2. 300 meter far from Prasat Hin Phimai.

Conversation 2

C1. How far from Amphoe Muang NakornRatchasima.

C2. 59. Kilometer is from Amphoe Muang NakornRatchasima.

C1. How we can go there?

C2. We can go by bus.

Conversation 3

C1. The museum is the center of cultural heritage in the northeastern.

C2. Emphasizing artifacts from the lower Isan.

C1. The interesting art objects belong to Dharavati and khmer art styles.

C2. The Dharavati style can be seen on sima or Boundary stone.

Conversation 4

C1. The Khmer style is evident in stone carving of likes pediments pillars and artificer.

C2. The masterpiece of the museum collection is the stone statue of King Jayavaraman 11.

C1. What time the Phimai National Museum is opened?

C2. It is opened from 09.00-16.00 oclock.

Conversation 5

C1. The Phimai National Museum is opened everyday from 09.00-16.00 Oclock

C2. How much for a ticket?

C1. Admission fee 30 Bahts.

C2. For young people free.

Conversation 1

C1. Do you know where is Prasat Hin Phanom Wan?

C2. Yes, I know.

C1. Can you tell me please.

C2. Prasat Hin Phanom Wan is located 20 kilometers from town.

Conversation 2

C1. How I can go there?

C2. You can go by bus on NakornRatchasima-KhonKhean Highway.

C1. And how far from NakornRatchasima Khonkhean Highway?

C2. About 5 kilometers.

Conversation 3

C1. Prasat Hin Phanom Wan is smaller than prasat Hin Phimai?

C2. Yes, it is.

²C1. Prasat Hin Phanom Wan it was built during the 10th-11th century.

C2. And it was abandoned in the 12th century.

Conversation 4

C1. In the Ayuthaya period it was adopted to be a Buddhist temple.

C2. The wall which you can see as Gopura consists of four entrances.

C1. The main entrance and principal Prang is a Mandaya like the one at Prasat Phimai.

C2. Many Buddha images of difference styles belonging to Ayuthaya and Bangkok school of art.

Conversation 5

C1. On the gate a Khmer inscription was found mentioning the year 1082 AD

C2. The southern lintel has also the sign of king Rama V. He is visited here.

C1. There is some evidence of other Prang in the compound.

C2. Some show distinctive signs of secondary restorations at later periods, Ayuthaya.

² Tourism Attractions and information of all the 19 provinces of Northeastern Thailand: Printed by Allied Printers

Conversation 1

C1. Buri Ram is a tranquil Province of simple pleasures.

C2. There are some notable places of interest such as the splendid Khmer temple.

C1. Mountain Buri Ram is 410 kilometers from Bangkok.

C1. The area of 10,300 square kilometers is divided into 14.

Conversation 2

C1. Khao Phanom Rung is located 53 kilometers from town.

C2. Khao Phanom Rung Built at the same time as Angkor Wat.

C1. Prasat Phanom Rung was originally a temple glorifying the Hindu deity Shiva.

C2. Prasat Phanom Rung is far from Bangkok about 465 kilometers.

Conversation 3

C1. The complex holds an extruding collection of Khmer art.

C2. Three magnificent Naga bridges in the park are the only examples of the kind in Thailand.

C1. The lintel carving of the main Prang display a superb execution of detail.

C2. One of the lintels the well know "Narai Bantomsin"

Conversation 4

C1. The depicts a cloning Vishnu recently returned from a museum in the United States.

C2. How far is Khao Phanom Rung from the town?

C1. Where is Khao Phanom Rung was Built?

C2. Khao Phanom Rung and the large Buddha image Building on Khao Kradong.

Conversation 5

C1. How many districts and sub districts of Buri Ram provinces.

C2. They are 16 districts and 4 sub districts.

C1. What is the meaning of Buri Ram?

C2. Buri Ram is mean "City of Happiness"

Conversation 1

- C1. Loei is located in the upper northwest part of Isan.
- C2. Loei is similar to the North in topography and climate.
- C1. The mountainous provinces is cool enough in the winter.
- C2. Loei is far from Bangkok about 520 km.

Conversation 2

- C1. Loei is Located in the center of the provinces 11,424 square km.
- C2. And are divided into twelve districts and one sub-district.
- C1. Phukradung National Park one of Thailand is best known nature preserves.
- C2. The park is dominate by large plateau covering 55 square km.

Conversation 3

- C1. On top of a mountain that rises 1.300 meters above sea level.
- C2. The summit is a grassy plain filled with wild and patches of pine forest.
- C1. Due to the elevation many plants and there the same as those found cooler climates.
- C2. Nights can be quite chilly.

Conversation 4

- C1. Phu Kradung is 77 km. South of Loei on the road to Khon Kean (Highway)
- C2. For reservations to stay in the park.

Conversation 1

C1.NakhonRatchasima is the first Isan province.

C2.A Traveller reaches it when coming from Bangkok, 260 km way.

C1.Also know as korat.

C2.The modern town was founded in the Ayutthaya Period by King Narai.

Conversation 2

C1.Laid out as a girded rectangle surrounded by a moat.

C2.The remaining of the moat and the city gated can still be seen.

C1.The gateway to the Northeast, Korat is the largest province in Thailand.

C2. It is divided into 24. Districts and three sub-district

Conversation 3

C1.The monument of Thao Suranari was built in 1934.

C2.In memory of the heroic wife of the Deputy Governor of Korat.

C1.Thao suranari foiled an invasion by Laotian prince and Wang.

C2.In 1826 when leaders of korat were on an expedition in cambodia.

Conversation 4

C1.There is a celebration in honor of Thao Suranari.

C2.Every year from march 23 to April 3.

C1.How we can go there?

C2.We can go by bus.

Conversation 5

C1.Where is the Monument of Thao Suranari?

C2.The monument of Thao Suranari was built in the town.

C1. When was the monument of Thao Suranari built?

C2.The monument of Thao Suranari was build in 1934.

Conversation 1

C1. Hello how do you do?

C2. Are you a tourist?

C1. Yes, I am a tourist.

C2. Where do you come from?

Conversation 2

C1. I come from England.

C2. Can you tell me your name.?

C1. My name is John.

C2. Have you ever been Thailand?

Conversation 3.

C1. No, I never been.

C2. Do you know Thailand?

C1. Yes I do.

C2. I know Buddhist temple well.

Conversation 4.

C1. What is interesting in Wat Po?

C2. They twenty small hills around the temple.

C1. Around the outer most wall of the church, there are 244 images

C2. And this temple is considered as the first “University” of Thailand

Conversation 5.

C1. When Wat Po established?

C2. In Ayudhaya period.

C1. Who constructed it?

C2. Nobody knows clearly who established.

Conversation 1

- C1. Today, we will go to travel in Wat Phra Pathom Chedi.
C2. It is the first Royal Temple, or where will you plan to visit?
C1. I agree with you. let's go to Nakhon Prathom.
C2. I have gone two times.

Conversation 2

- C1. Please explain me about its background.
C2. Wat Phra Pathom Chedi was the old temple which was built in an ancient age.
C1. It's original name was know as 'Wat Yai'.
C2. Who established this temple?

Conversation 3

- C1. It's surmised that this temple was built before 350 B.E .
C2. How's about Pagoda?
C1. The pagoda had been built since 350 B.E.
C2. In the period of King Asoka of an ancient India.

Conversation 4

- C1. After the third Buddhist Council he sent Buddhist missionaries to various parts of the world.
C2. He sent two Buddhist missionaries name "Sona and Uttara"to "Suwan phum
C1.Are there something inside Pagoda?
C2. Yes, there are. The historians believed that the first Pagoda had been founded in Thailand

Conversation 5

- C1. Do you have something like this in your country.
C2. Nothing if it has, it's only small.
C1. Do you believe in rice and goodness.
C2. I think that it's believe for me no idea.

Conversation 1

- C1. Good afternoon, How are you?
C2. Good afternoon I'm fine, thank you, and you?
C1. Very well thank you?
C2. Do you live here?

Conversation 2

- C1. No, I don't here, I come from Korat.
C2. Have you ever been here before.
C1. No, it's the first time, do you often visit here?
C2. Certainly, I like the nature here so I'll come here twice per month.

Conversation 3

- C1. Why it is called 'Wat phrathat Doi Suthep'?
C2. Because it located on the peak of mountain named 'Suthep'
C1. There is relic of the lord Buddha placed here, so it is said.
C2. I see. Who established this temple.

Conversation 4

- C1. According to the history of it, before founding the temple.
C2. The pagoda was built by the order of king Kuena of Chaingmai on 1929 B.E.
C1. On 2444 B.E. it was founded as a monastery with the monk.
C2. Is this temple open to the public every day?

Conversation 5

- C1. Yes, it is You can visit here all day.
C2. Oh, what is that?
C1. It's religious education house.
C2. I think it does importance.

Conversation 1

C1. Hello! How do you do?

C2. Hello! How do you do?

C1. I want to know about Wat Trimit, can you tell me about it?

C2. Yes, I can

Conversation 2.

C1. Where is Wat Trimit?

C2. Wat Trimit is situated on 661 trimit Rd Sampanthawong Bangkok.

C1. Can you tell me how wat trimit is important.

C2. Wat trimit is the second grade Royal Temple, noble Royal category.

Conversation 3.

C1. The temple which draws the thousand of the Buddhist visiting for worship.

C2. The Golden Buddha Image of Sukothai period.

C1. The foreigner like to visit this temple.

Conversation 4.

C1. Which period Wat Trimit was built?

C2. I'm not sure, it is assumed that it was built during the Sukhothai period.

C1. Do you know why this temple is name 'Wat Trimit'?

C2. There three Chinese joined hands and built this temple and named "Wat sam
jean

Conversation 5

C1. Why is named "sam jean"

C2. Yes, later it is changed as wat trimit .

C1. Which can be translate in to Thai "มิตรสามคน" In English" three friends

C2. Ok.See you later.

73. Wat Phrasriratnamahathat / Conversations.

Advanced English 73

Conversation 1

C1. Hello do you do?

C2. Very well thank you.

C1. Where are you come from?

C2. I come from America.

Conversation 2

C1. Where are you going?

C2. I going to visit Wat Phrasriratnamahathat.

C1. How far from here.

C2. A bout 100 meters far from.

Conversation 3

C1. What is your name?

C2. My name is Phramaha somsak.

C1. What is your temple?

C2. My temple is Wat Phrasriratanamahathat.

Conversation 4

C1. How many monk in the temple.

C2. They are 35 monks in the temple.

C1. Who is your abbot?

C2. PhraraJratanarangsri.

Conversation 5

C1. Who built Wat Phrasriratanamahathat?

C2. King Rama IV and Phraprakrommuni built it.

C1. When was it built?

C2. On 2458.

Conversation 1

C1. Hello how are you?

C2. Excuse me, what is your name?

C1. My name is San Smit. And you?

C2. I want to visit Wat Phranaraymaharat.

Conversation 2

C1. Where is Wat Phranaraymaharat.

C2. Do you know Wat Phranaraymaharat?

C1. Yes, I have been there twice.

C2. What interests you in wat Phranaraymaharat.

Conversation 3

C1. I am interested the Buddha image, teaching hall and the couple sima.

C2. Can you tell me about Wat Phranarayana?

C1. Yes, follow me, I will take you to go there.

C2. Ok. Shall we go there.

Conversation 4

C1. How far is Wat Phranaraymahathat.

C2. It is about 1 km from here.

C1. How we can go there?

C2. We can walk.

Conversation 5

C1. Wat Phranaraymaharat it situated at No, 2475 Naimuang, Nakornratchasima.

C2. Do you know Sukothai period?

C1. I don't know.

C2. Sukothai is the first capital of Thailand.

Conversation 1

- C1. Hello, how are you?
C2. Very well, thanks and you?
C1. I'm fine, thanks.
C2. It's good to see you again.

Conversation 2

- C1. Do you know wat Phanan Choeng?
C2. Yes, I know.
C1. Where is wat Phanan Choeng located?
C2. A located in tambon klong Suan Plu.Muang district Ayutthaya province

Conversation 3

- C1. When did the prince of Uthong found Wat Pananchoeng?
C2. He founded it in 1324, 26 year before the formal establishment of Ayutthaya.
C1. How high is Phra Chao Panan Choeng?
C2. It is 19 meter high.

Conversation 4

- C1. How wide is Phra Chao Panan Choeng?
C2. It is 14 meters wide.
C1.What was the principal image in the vihara called?
C2. It was called'Phra Choa Phanan Choeng'.

Conversation 5

- C1. When was Phra Chao Phanan Choeng built?
C2. It was built in AD. 1325.
C1. Who built wat Phanan Choeng?
C2. I don't know.

Conversation 1

- C1. Hello how are you Somsak?
C2. Yes, I'm fine Thank you and you?
C1. Yes, I'm fine Thank you.
C2. I want to know about Korat province.

Conversation 2

- C1. I'm not sure that I can help you more.
C2. O.K Can you tell me what attractions of there are in Korat.
C1. Yes, attractions place in Korat such as the monument of Thao Suranari.
C2. The main chapel of Wat Sala Loi.

Conversation 3

- C1. The splendour of Prasat Hin Phimai.
C2. Maha Weerawong National Museum and Muang Sema.
C1. Why was the monument of Thao suranari built?
C2. The monument of Thao suranari was built for the heroic wife of the Deputy
Governor of Korat.

Conversation 4

- C1. Where is Wat Sala Loi.?
C2. Wat Sala Loi is on the banks of the lam Takhong river.
C1. What is the special characteristic of the main chapel of Wat Sala Loi?
C2. The main chapel of Wat sala Loi was built to look like a chinese junk at sea.

Conversation 5

- C1. Where is Maha Weeraawong National Museum?
C2. It is located at wat suthachinda opposite the provincial hall.
C1. Where is Muang Sema?
C2. Muang Sema is at Sung Noen district.

Conversation 1

- C1. Where is Wat Phrasirattana Mahathatu?
C2. Wat Phrasirattana Mahathatu is Srisatchanalai sub-district Sukhotai province.
C1. Which a kind of temple is it?
C2. It is the first grade Royal temple, noble Royal category.

Conversation 2

- C1. What was it established in the age?
C2. It was established in the age Muang Chaliang Savankhalok.
C1. Why has it become a deserted monastery?
C2. Because when Autthaya of country had been attacked by Burmese.

Conversation 3

- C1. So this temple was burnt by enemy three times,
C2. That is on 2310, 2313 and 2328 B.E.
C1. What the original names of the temple?
C2. There were original names of it such as Wat Phraborommahathat, etc.

Conversation 4

- C1. How wide and long is Phra Ubosoth?
C2. It is 10 meters wide, 16 meters long, with 3 meters wide.
C1. What was the chapel placed within?
C2. This chapel was placed the image of Buddha that was made of laetrile.

Conversation 5

- C1. What was Phra Prang instated?
C2. Phra Prang was instated the relics of the Lord Buddha.
C1. Ok shall we go?
C2. Yes all right.

Conversation 1

C1. Where is located Wat Bueng?

C2. Wat Bueng is located within the walls of city No.82 Chumpol Road.

C1. Which type of temple is it?

C2. It is the royal, the third class, common type.

Conversation 2

C1. What was built on September 10, 2220 B.E. in Ayutthaya's Phranaraimaharaj period.

C2. Why is it known well by Korat people that is "Wat Bueng"?

C1. Because it is located in the heart of swarm. So it is called "Wat Bueng"

C2. What is the characteristic of Phra Ubosoth?

Conversation 3

C1. The characteristic of Phra Ubosoth is Chinese junk form. It is clearly.

C2. How wide and long is Phra Ubosoth?

C1. It is measuring 13.15 Ms. In width 22 ms. In length and 30 ms. In height.

C2. Why was the temple placed within?

Conversation 4

C1. What is the characteristic of Jetiya?

C2. The characteristic of Jetiya is made of cement with brick for together with Phra Ubosoth.

C1. How is the area of Wat bueng shared?

C2. It is shared by four boundaries of the temple as follow.

Conversation 5

C1. Boundary of the Buddha's monastery. Area which is location of Ubosoth.

C2. Boundary of Thammavas areas which are location of Pariyattitham school.

C1. Boundary of monk's monastery areas which are location of monk's quarter.

C2. Boundary of used to perform benefit: areas which are around temple.

Conversation 1

- C1. Where is Khao Yai National park?
C2. It is in the middle of center and Northeastern of Thailand.
C1. Khao Yai is a big mountain?
C2. Ha, yes.

Conversation 2

- C1. Khao Yai National Park ranges 2168 square km. Over part of four provinces.
C2. It is NakhonRatchasima, Nakhon Nayok, Saraburi and Prachinburi.
C1. Khao Yai, which means “Big Mountain”.
C2. Khao yai was established in 1962 as Thailand’s first national park.

Conversation 3

- C1. It is the country’s most important wildlife sanctuary.
C2. Home to varieties dear, elphuty and tropical birds such as hornbills.
C1. The park has over 20 waterfalls.
C2. The most of them is the 25 meter high Haeo Suwat.

Conversation 4

- C1. The most famous of which is the 25 meter high haeo suwat.
C2. This magnificent park has extensive network of trails for nature lovers to explore.
C1. How far from Bangkok?
C2. Khao Yai is about 60 km far from Bangkok.

Conversation 5

- C1. How far from Korat?
C2. Khao yai is from Korat about 40 km.
C1. How we can go there?
C2. We can go there by bus or train.

Conversation 1

C1. Khon Kaen is a bustling prosperous town in the heart of ISAN.

C2. Khon Kaen was Established in 1783.

C1. Khon Kean is today the center for regional development projects and home to the northeast's

C2. Khon Kaen has a largest University.

Conversation 2

C1. Khon Kaen is 450 km from Bangkok.

C2. Khon Kaen is covers an area of 10886 square km.

C1. Khon Kaen it has 20 districts and 3 sub-districts.

C2. Phra That Kham Kaen is a 19-meter high Jedi at Wat Jedyaphum.

Conversation 3

C1. Wat Jedyaphum is far from about 30 km.

C2. Legend has it that two revered monks on their way to Nakhon Phanom Province.

C1. They spent the night at the site of the current temple.

C2. Where they observed a dead tamarind tree.

Conversation 4

C1. Upon returning they saw the tree had miraculously come back to life.

C2. They told the villager to build a chedi over the "kham kaen" Chordwood log)

C1. The province derives its name from this Jedi.

C2. Which is includes a medical herd garden.

Conversation 5

C1. How we can go to Phra That Kham Kean from Bangkok?

C2. We can go by bus.

C1. How far from Khon Kean province?

C2. About 50 km. From Khon Kean province.

Conversation 1

C1. Will you please to give me some advice Somsak?

C2. Of course, sir what is it?

C1. What should i do on Thai New year's days.

C2. That means your are planing to celebrate it with your Thai friends, right?

Conversation 2

C1. Yes, I have many Thai colleagues where I work.

C2. I wish to know what preparations I ought to do.

C1. Normally, on the last day of the year or 31 st at night party.

C2. We give dinners and celebrations to see out the old year.

Conversation 3

C1. Welcome in the new year at the sametime.

C2. On the first of new year what ought I do to?

C1. Well, you ought to going in the traditional presentation of early morning food to monks.

C2. Of course I mean if that does not conflict with your religion and custom.

Conversation 4

C1. What greeting should I give them in Thai?

C2. You ought to say in Thai "sawasdee pee Mai krap"

C1. Beg your pardon?

C2. Sawasdee pee Mai Krap.

Conversation 5

C1. Thank you very much.

C2. Swasdee pee Mai Krap Right?

C1. Very good, sir

C2. OK. See you soon.

Conversation 1

- C1. Hi Mr. Suksan Are you free this evening?
C2. Yes, have you any good idea?
C1. This evening I want to watch the loy Krathong festival You go with me?
C2. Where will the festival take place?

Conversation 2

- C1. On the river near the Suranari monument.
C2. When will it be conducted?
C1. It will actually be conducted when the full moon begins to rise.
C2. What time shall we go?

Conversation 3

- C1. Well the full moon begins to rise at 7.00 p.m.
C2. So, we shall go about half eight.
C1. Would it be convenient for your?
C2. That'd be fine.

Conversation 4

- C1. The festival had only at the Phranaraymaharat Temple?
C2. No not only there.
C1. We shall see many people float their Krathong along the canal.
C2. Do you know what the Krathong is made from?

Conversation 5

- C1. Thanks I like to know.
C2. It made from banana leap.
C1. Also decorated with flowers candle incense sticks.
C2. I would like to see it very much.

Conversation 1

C1.It is not uncommon to visit Bangkok.

C2.To come across a group of Thais crowding around television sets watching boxing match.

C1.Thai boxing or Muay Thai, attracts the most attention of the Thai people.

C2.Your visit to Bangkok will not be complete if you do not see at least one Thai boxing match.

Conversation 2

C1.Although boxing matches are regularly televised.

C2.Thai boxing is almost universally regarded as today's most exciting ring sport.

C1.Thai boxing is the most violent martial art compared with Japanese Karate.

C2.A boxing stadium is normally a noisy crowded area,

Conversation 3

C1.Full of spectators cheering and screaming supports for their favourites.

C2.Each fight starts with both corners performing a ritual honouring and praying to their teachers.

C1.A match consists of five rounds

C2.Each of which lasts three minutes with a two minute break between rounds.

Conversation 4

C1.The bout is normally accompanied by the music of a three instrument orchestra

C2.The music rises and falls with the action taking place in the roped ring.

C1.Apart from using their gloves, boxers are allowed to use their feet, legs, knees, elbows, shoulders.

C2.And using any other parts of the body, except the head, to overcome their opponent.

Conversation 5

C1.A winner is awarded for a knock-out or points decision given by a panel of judges.

C2.There are two boxing stadiums in the city.

C1.Such as Ratchadamnoen Stadium on Thanon Ratchadamnoen Nok.

C2.And Lumpini Stadium on Thanon Rama IV.

Conversation 1

C1. Rocket festival or “Boon Bang fai” is the beginning of the raining season.

C2. The festival is popularly celebrated of the northeast of Thailand.

C1. Usually it will be in Yasothon and Ubol provinces.

C2. The Celebrate is on

Conversation 2

C1. The festival itself owes its beginning to a legend that a raining god name Vassaka.

C2. It was know for his worship with his first fascination

C1. The recievpletiful raining for rice cultivative.

C2. The festival has been carried out till this day.

Conversation 3

C1. Making the rocket is under the guidance of Buddhist monk.

C2. Some rocket are nine meters in leght and carrieg 800 kg.

C1. Before igniting the rockets there will be more singing and dance.

C2. There climax of the festival is the ignition time.

Conversation 4

C1. One by one the rockets are fired from the launching platforms.

C2. The rocket that reaches the greatest height is one their way.

C1. The rocket will dances and urge for rewards one their way.

C2. Those that explode or fail to fly will be thrown to the mud.

Conversation 5

C1. The celebration is a communal affair of the villages.

C2. Who come to joy and happiness together.

C1. After that they go to the field.

C2. And starting to born rocket.

Conversation 1

C1. Hello, Suchad

C2. Hi, Suphano.

C1. Could you tell me about Buddhism in Thailand?

C2. Oh, yes, no problem for me.

Conversation 2

C1. What's the meaning of Buddhism?

C2. The Buddhism is a religion that was found by lord Buddha

C1. Now day there are many countries to accepting the Buddhism.

C2. Such as Thailand and another countries.

Conversation 3

C1. Buddhism pays a very significant role in the daily life of the Thai people.

C2. Since about 95% of the Thai people are Buddhist.

C1. The Buddhist was first brought to Thailand during the 3rd century B.C..

C2. The Buddhist missionaries led by Sona and Uttara visited Suwanaphum.

Conversation 4

C1. They were dispatched by the Buddhist Indian emperor.

C2. There are about 27,000 Buddhist temples across the country in Thailand.

C1. In Thailand Buddhist monks are highly venerated for their chaste life.

C2. All Thais does subscribed to Buddhist doctrine.

Conversation 5

C1. Buddhism was proclaimed as the state religion.

C2. Thai constitutions stipulate that Thai kings must be Buddhist.

C1. However, the kings must be the upholders of all religions.

C2. It's great example for the newgeneration Buddhist.

Conversation 1

- C1. Hello, Somsak. How are you today?
C2. Hi, Suphano I'm fine thank and you?
C1. Very well have you freetime?
C2. Yes, do you have good idea?

Conversation 2

- C1. I want to go to the temple in this morning?
C2. Why do you want to go the temple?
C1. Because, to day is Buddhist lent, isn't it?
C2. Well, The Buddhist lent day.

Conversation 3

- C1. The Buddhist lent day is one of the sacred days or special day to the Buddhist.
C2. The Buddhist lent which start on the first day of the waxing moon of the eight Lunar month.
C1. The Buddhists all over the country perform merit-making and observe silas.
C2. Some offer food and offering to the monks also listen to sermon to purify their mind.

Conversation 4

- C1. Excuse me what the meaning of "pansa"?
C2. It's mean the raining season during there months.
C1. Haw do monks and novices spent three months of the annual rainy season.
C2. They can't travel to somewhere.

Conversation 5

- C1. The cerebration of the beginning of Buddhist lent is maked by the ceremony.
C2. Some Buddhist followers consider refraing from smoking.
C1. I will consider refraing from smoking too.
C2. I will observing five precepts pan jasila Rules.

Conversation 1

C1. Hello,

C2. Hi,

C1. Happy birthday to you.

C2. Sorry, What's meaning?

Conversation 2

C1. For the King's Birthdays.

C2. Really, what's date?

C1. It fall on the fifth of Decembor.

C2. Long live the King.

Conversation 3

C1. All of Thai people though that to day is father's nation day.

C2. We showed honesty to one father's nation and long live.

C1. His Majesty the king is well recognized as the heart and soul of the Thai nation.

C2. Sure.

Conversation 4

C1. What's His Majesty King name?

C2. His Majesty King is Bhumibol Adulyadej.

C1. What's the meaning of his name?

C2. The meaning of his name is "strength of the land, incomparald Power.

Conversation 5

C1. His birthday is observed as a nation Holiday.

C2. The whole nation prays to the holiday trip to his Majesty.

C1. Please the thins in the universe to bless His Majesty with good health.

C2. It's proud day of the Thai nation.

Conversation 1

- C1. Good morning, Mr. Suphano.
C2. Good morning, Mr. Chamnong.
C1. Do you want to go to the temple with me?
2. Yes, I do we will that kathin Ceremony all together, isn't it?

Conversation 2

- C1. What's the meaning of thot?
C2. Thot that is meaning an offering to the monk.
C1. What's the meaning of kathin?
C2. Kathin is an embroider frame.

Conversation 3

- C1. We can make an offering with the end of the 3- months rains.
C2. Three-months about july to september, isn't it?
C1. Yes, it is. do you Know what's kathin samakki?
C2. All of the people will be the sponsor of the ceremany.

Conversation 4

- C1. What's Royal kathin?
C2. The king or his representative will be the sponsor of the ceremony.
C1. Kathin samakki will be presented in the public temple.
C2. Royal kathin will be presented in the Royal temple.

Conversation 5

- C1. The temple of down is a Royal temple.
C2. The reclining Buddha temple is a Royal temple.
C1. I want to see the king take journey on the board the Royal barge.
C2. It's color full and great, too.

Conversation 1

- C1. Hello, Suchat.
C2. Hi, Suphano!
C1. Sit down, please.
C2. Thanks now we talking about Makapuja day.

Conversation 2

- C1. What's Makapuja day?
C2. It's one of the most important Buddhism days.
C1. It fall on the fall moon day doesn't it?
C2. Yes, it's about the last week of february or early March.

Conversation 3

- C1. What's the meaning of the day, the great four events?
C2. It's when 1250 Buddhist monks, all disciples of Lord Buddha, came to see him on same day.
C1. All of them where the enlightened monk.
C2. All of them has been individually ordained by Lord Buddha himself.

Conversation 4

- C1. They assembled on the full moon day of the third lunar month.
C2. Lord Buddha gave the assembly a discourse "ovadha patimoka"
C1. His teaching summaried in to three acts.
C2. To do good, to avoid all wil,l to purity the mind.

Conversation 5

- C1. Maka Puja day is special day in the Buddhism year.
C2. It's the birth enlightenment and passing a way of the Lord Buddha.
C1. The people go to the temple at night and walk around it three time before going inside to pay respect to the image of Buddha and the monks.
C2. There are candle it procession or "wien tien" in the evening.

Conversation 1

C1. “Song” is songkran Festival day?

C2. Songkran is the Thai traditional New Year.

C1. The festival fall on April 13, the hostest day of the year..

C2. Songkran is a Thai word which mean “move” or “Change place”

Conversation 2

C1. Songkran is also regarded as a “spring cleaning” day.

C2. Songkran is also know as the “water festival” as people believe that water will wash away bad luck.

C1. This Thai traditional New year begins early morning.

C2. In the morning offering food to Buddhist monks.

Conversation 3

C1. And in the morning the people releasing caged birds to fly freely into the sky.

C2. People will pay their respects to the elders by pouring scented water over their palms.

C1. The elders in return wish the youngsters good luck and prosperity.

C2. And money come or being all a day.

Conversation 4

C1. In the afternoon after performing a bathing meeting for Buddha images and the monks.

C2. The celebrants both young and old joyfully splash water on each other.

C1. The most taked about is celebrated from 13 to 15 during this period.

C2. The people from all parts of the country flock there to enjoy the water festival.

Conversation 5

C1. To watch the Songkran contest and the beautiful parades.

C2. In Bangkok the Buddha image “ Buddha sihing” is brought out from the national Museum.

C1. Thai people sprinkle lustful water at sanam Luang.

C2. This is the meaning of “Songkran festival.”

Conversation 1

C.1 Where's the airlines office?

C.2 It's near the bus terminal, the central Terminal

C.1 How far is that from here?

C.2 About a half a mile ,I think.

Conversation 2

C.1 Where's the post office?

C.2 It's three blocks that way.

C.1 What did you say?

C.2 Three blocks up that street.

Conversation 3

C.1 Where's the airport?

C.2 It's north of the city.

C.1 What's the best way to get there?

C.2 Take Highway twele to the north.

Conversation 4

C.1 What street is the local library on?

C.2 I don't know.

C.1 How can I find out?

C.2 Why don't you ask a policeman?

Conversation 5

C.1 Where's the nearest telephone?

C.2 There's one in that drugstore.

C.1 Do you mean the store over there?

C.2 Yes that's the one

♣ ♣ ♣ Marriage is a lottery ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C.1 What's the matter?

C.2 I need some information.

C.1 Go to that desk over there.

C.2 Thank you very much.

Conversation 2

C.1 Can you help me, please?

C.2 I'll try to.

C.1 What's the best way to get to this address?

C.2 I'm sorry, but I really don't know.

Conversation 3

C.1 How can I get to that address?

C.2 You can go by taxi.

C.1 Isn't there any other way?

C.2 Yes by bus, but it's complicated.

Conversation 4

C.1 How do I get to the nearest subway station?

C.2 It's two blocks up that street.

C.1 Do you mean the street running that way?

C.2 Yes, That's the one.

Conversation 5

C.1 Is this the right way to main station?

C.2 No. you're going the wrong way.

C.1 Which way should I be going then?

C.2 It's in that direction-about six blocks.

♣ ♣ ♣ Love often turns to hate ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

- C.1 Pardon me. Where's the library?
C. 2 It's in the next block, straight (ahead.)
C. 1 Thank you very much.
C.2 That all right.

Conversation 2

- C.1 Where's the Humanity Department?
C.2 It's downstairs.
C.1 Do you know the exact address?
C.2 Yes. It's 222 main street.

Conversation 3

- C.1 Can you tell me where is the library?
C.2 Yes. Do you see that church down the street?
C.1 Yes It's quite easy to see with such a tall spire.
C.2 Just turn Left there and walk three blocks.

Conversation 4

- C.1 Are the instructions too complicated for you?
C.2 Well, would you mind repeating them?
C.1 I'd be glad to.
C.2 I'd like to write them down this time.

Conversation 5

- C.1 Can you tell me where the station is?
C.2 Turn right and go four blocks.
C.1 Would you mind repeating that?
C.2 I'd be glad to.

♣ ♣ ♣ All are not saints that go to church ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C.1 Where do I get the downtown bus?

C.2 Walk straight ahead one block.

C.1 Thanks very much.

C.2 Don't mention it.

Conversation 2

C.1 Where does the bus stop?

C.2 At the next corner.

C.1 Does it go downtown?

C.2 Only the number sixes bus goes downtown.

Conversation 3

C.1 Are there many bus stops along this street?

C.2 Yes, there are. There are quite a few.

C.1 Are they located at the corners?

C.2 Most of them are, but a few aren't.

Conversation 4

C.1 How do I get to the station?

C.2 Take the bus at the next corner.

C.1 Do you know which bus I take?

C.2 Watch for number five.

Conversation 5

C.1 How much is the fare on this bus?

C.2 It's fifty cents.

C.1 Do I give the money to you?

C.2 No. Just drop it in this machine.

♣ ♣ ♣ Marriage is sunset of love ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

- C.1 Does this bus go in to the city?
C.2 Yes, Where do you want to go?
C.1 I want to go Mahasarakham.
C.2 This is the right bus then.

Conversation 2

- C.1 Does this bus as far as Mahasarakham?
C.2 No. You'll have to transfer.
C.1 Where can I do it?
C.2 You can get the Mahasarakham bus at the next corner.

Conversation 3

- C.1 Is this where I get off the bus?
C.2 Not here-at the next stop.
C.1 Can I catch a taxi right there?
C.2 Yes. There's a taxi stand right by the bus stop.

Conversation 4

- C.1 Excuse me, but how do I get to this address?
C.2 Get off the bus at Mittaphap Street and Main.
C.1 Thanks very much for your help.
C.2 Don't mention it.

Conversation 5

- C.1 Is west street the next stop?
C.2 I'm sorry, but I didn't understand you.
C.1 Does the bus stop at west street next?
C.2 Yes. right at the next corner.

♣ ♣ ♣ More love. More hate ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C.1 Where are you going now?

C.2 To the hotel.

C.1 Are you going by bus or by taxi?

C.2 Probably by taxi if I can get one.

Conversation 2

C.1 I need a taxi.

C.2 The taxis are by the entrance.

C.1 Thank you very much.

C.2 You're welcome.

Conversation 3

C.1 Is this taxi taken?

C.2 No. Where are you going?

C.1 I'm going to the University student Center.

C.2 O.K I know right where it is.

Conversation 4

C.1 How much is the fare?

C.2 Two dollars and fifty cents.

C.1 Here keep the change.

C.2 Thank you very much.

Conversation 5

C.1 It's raining very hard right now.

C.2 Why don't we get a taxi.

C.1 That's good idea.

C.2 Now, I only hope we can find me.

♣ ♣ ♣ The more I see you, the more I love ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C.1 Are you taking a trip today?

C.2 Yes. We're going to Bangkok

C.1 It's a good day for the trip.

C.2 I'm glad the sun is shining.

Conversation 2

C.1 How far is it from here to the coast?

C.2 There's one two miles from here.

C.1 Is there a place to eat there?

C.2 Yes. There's a restaurant next to the station.

Conversation 3

C.1 What's the best way to Rangsis City.

C.2 The superhighway, but it's also the longest way.

C.1 How much longer is it that way?

C.2 About ten or twelve miles.

Conversation 4

C.1 Are they going by way of North Plains?

C.2 No. They aren't taking that route.

C.1 How are they traveling then?

C.2 They're driving directly to Rangsis City.

Conversation 5

C1. What the best way to NakornRatchasima?

C2. The superhighway, but it's also the longest way.

C.1 How much longer is it that way?

C.2 About 5 or 10 miles. ♣ ♣ ♣ Beauty is the girl's wealth ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C.1 I have to take a trip by air next week.

C.2 Do you like to fly?

C.1 I don't know because I've never flown before.

C.2 You'll probably like it very much.

Conversation 2

C.1 I have to go home next week.

C.2 How will you go by car?

C.1 I'll probably go by air.

C.2 You'll get there very fast then.

Conversation 3

C.1 Are you going on a trip next Saturday.

C.2 Yes. We're going to KonKhean.

C.1 Are you flying or going by train?

C.2 We're traveling by car.

Conversation 4

C.1 How will you travel to Laos ?

C.2 We'll go by plane.

C.1 How long will it take?

C.2 It'll take about five or six hours to get there.

Conversation 5

C.1 What time will you leave your house?

C.2 I'll leave around seven thirty.

C.1 How are you going to go by train or by bus.

C.2 Neither. I'm going to drive.

♣ ♣ ♣ A loveless marriage is dangerous ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C.1 What time do you have?

C.2 It's ten o'clock sharp?

C.1 Thank a lot.

C.2 Don't mention it.

Conversation 2

C.1 What's the time?

C.2 It's almost eight.

C.1 Do you have the exact time?

C.2 Yes, it's two minutes to eight.

Conversation 3

C.1 Excuse me what time is it?

C.2 It's five o'clock.

C.1 I guess my watch is slow then

C.2 Well, I know mine isn't fast.

Conversation 4

C.1 What time is it right now?

C.2 It's four o'clock

C.1 I've got four ten.

C.2 You're ten minutes fast then.

Conversation 5

C.1 Do you have the correct time?

C.2 Yes It's two minute to four.

C.1 Are you sure your watch is right?

C.2 It may be a few minutes slow.

♣ ♣ ♣ Love does much, but money more ♣ ♣ ♣

100. Asking the Time B / Conversations

Advanced English 100

Conversation 1

C.1 What time is it now?

C.2 I don't have my watch on right now

C.1 Is there a clock around here?

C.2 There's one in the next room

Conversation 2

C.1 Do you have the right time?

C.2 I don't know exactly, but it's after nine.

C.1 It was nine o'clock when I got here.

C.2 Well, I'm sorry I can't help you.

Conversation 3

C.1 Do you have any idea of the time?

C.2 I don't know exactly, but it's after nine.

C.1 It was nine o'clock when I got here.

C.2 Well, I'm sorry I can't help you.

Conversation 4

C.1 At what time is the meeting.

C.2 Eight o'clock.

C.1 Be there at eight o'clock sharp, then.

C.2 I'll try to get there before eight.

Conversation 5

C.1 How often does this station give the news?

C.2 Every hour on the hour.

C.1 When do they announce the weather?

C.2 Ten minutes to and ten minutes after the hour

♣ ♣ ♣ Still water runs deep ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 2

C1. When did Somsak return?

C2. I beg your pardon.

C1. Please tell me when Somsak returned.

C2. I can't tell you.

Conversation 2

C1. When will the party be held.

C2. Vichai can tell you when the party will be held

C1. Whom did they invite to the party?

C2. You'll have to ask Vichai whom they invited.

Conversation 3

C1. Where did the people go?

C2. I don't have any ideas where they went?

C1. Do you know where Suksan went?

C2. I didn't even know he had gone.

Conversation 4

C1. What did Somchai say to Mary?

C2. She didn't tell me what Fred had said to her.

C1 Where will she be this afternoon?

C2. She didn't tell me where she would be.

Conversation 5

C1. Whose car is Vichai using?

C2. He didn't tell me whose car she was using.

C1. Why does he need a car so urgently?

C2. Why he needs a car really doesn't interest me.

102. Infinitive of Reason or Purpose / Conversations

Advanced English 102

Conversation 1

- C1. My friend enrolled at a local University.
C2. Did he say why he enrolled there?
C1. He enrolled there to improve his English he said.
C2. I suspect he did it to satisfy his boss.

Conversation 2

- C1. I've come to see Alice.
C2. Sorry. She left the library for about ten minutes ago.
C1. I wonder why she went there.
C2. I think she went there to meet someone.

Conversation 3

- C1. Could I borrow some money from you?
C2. What do you need it for?
C1. I need it to pay my telephone bill.
C2. All right, but I'll have to stop at the bank to get it.

Conversation 4

- C1. Chamnong has changed his plans in order to go with us.
C2. I'm glad that he was able to change them.
C1. In order to change them., he had to speak to Mr. Sukwat.
C2. It was nice of Mr. Sukwat to give Chamnong permission.

Conversation 5

- C1. I'm here to get some details about this classified ad.
C2. I'm sorry, but you'll have to write to the advertiser.
C1. Why must I write to the advertiser?
C2. In order to get the information you want.

Conversation 1

- C1. Do you enjoy writing letters?
C2. No. I put off writing letters whenever possible.
C1. Do you also postpone writing reports?
C2. Unfortunately, I do.

Conversation 2

- C1. Why did they refuse to give you the information?
C2. They probably don't wish to reveal their plans yet.
C1. Did they seem to want to help us?
C2. In fact they even offered to.

Conversation 2

- C1. Have you finished writing the report?
C2. I expect to complete it in an hour or so.
C1. Don't stop working because of me.
C2. I won't I've resolved to finish it today.

Conversation 3

- C1. Have you practiced using the new words in sentences?
C2. No. I'm afraid I've failed to do that.
C1. I strongly advise practicing that way.
C2. The teacher suggested doing it that way too.

Conversation 5

- C1. What did Paul finally decide to become?
C2. I think he's considering a lawyer.
C1. Where does he intend to go to the University?
C2. So far, he's avoided making that decision.

Conversation 1

- C1. When do you plan to leave for Japan?
C2. We hope to leave on the tenth.
C1. Why did you put off leaving until the tenth?
C1. Well, we need to buy a lot of thing before leaving.

Conversation 2.

- C1. When do you expect to hear from your friends?
C2. I really hesitate even to guess.
C1. I advise not worrying about it.
C2. I've already made up my mind not to worry.

Conversation 2

- C1. Do you resent having to follow orders?
C2. Truthfully, I can't stand taking orders from people.
C1. But you shouldn't risk losing your job because of that.
C2. I try not to take chances.

Conversation 4

- C1. I can't help worrying about what they'll do.
C2. Personally, I don't think they'll dare do anything.
C1. I recall having heard other people say that
C2. We can always force them to stop complaining.

Conversation 5

- C1. Did you war your friend not to say anything?
C2. I told him was important that he reveal nothing.
C1. I recommend that he even avoid answering any questions.
C2. I'll remind him to keep this a strict secret.

Conversation 1

- C1. Where should I park my car?
C2. Didn't Fred show you where to park it?
C1. He wasn't surer what to tell me.
C2. Then let's ask the guard over there where to put it.

Conversation 2

- C1. Would you explain how to pronounce this word?
C2. I thought you already knew how to pronounce it.
C1. I did know, but I've forgotten.
C2. Well, I hope you remember how to pronounce to next time.

Conversation 3

- C1. Whom should we see to get permission to leave?
C2. I think I know whom to speak to.
C1. I wonder how we can explain out difficult situation.
C2. I've been wondering how to do it to.

Conversation 4

- C1. With whom are you going to ride to the party with?
C2. Mary, because she know where to go.
C1. I didn't realize Mary knew how to drive a car.
C2. I think she leaned how to drive just recently.

Conversation 5

- C1. Which one of these sweaters are you going to buy?
C2. I really don't know which one to choose.
C1. In that case, do you want me to tell you what to do?
C2. Since I can't decide which to take, I'd appreciate your advice.

Conversation 1

C1. Is it possible to convince your friend he's wrong?

C2. Well, he's likely to be very stubborn

C1. I'm willing to try it if it's sensible to do so.

C2. It would be foolish of him not to at least listen.

Conversation 2

C1. It's hard to get fast service in this store.

C2. I'm always reluctant to shop here because of that.

C1. I guess it's silly to get angry over such a small thing.

C2. And I'm sure it would be useless to complain to the manager.

Conversation 3

C1. It's absurd to suspect Somsak of having lied to us.

C2. Yes. He's much too honest to do anything like that.

C1. However, it's essential to find out what happened.

C2. I'm too upset about all this to know what to do.

Conversation 4

C1. I'm glad to hear that you've found a good job.

C2. I think I was lucky to find one so quickly.

C1. Now I suppose you're eager to get started.

C2. Yes, it'll be wonderful to work in such nice quarters.

Conversation 5

C1. Isn't it rather expensive to live in that part of the city?

C2. Perhaps, but it was impossible for us to find anything else.

C1. Of course, it must be convenient to live so close to your office.

C2. Yes, it's practical to live there even if it's expensive.

Conversation 1

- C1. Why didn't somsak finish the whole job?
C2. I don't know he seemed eager to do it.
C1. Maybe he was afraid to show his work to anyone.
C2. Well I know he was anxious to get started this morning.

Conversation 2

- C1. How do you like your new job as a receptionist?
C2. Well, it's interesting to meet so many people.
C1. But isn't it boring to say the same things all day long?

Conversation 3

- C1. I was thrilled to hear the news.
C2. Your parents will be pleased to hear it too.
C1. Wasn't it exciting to hear that you had won the prize?
C2. Yes, but it was hard to believe.

Conversation 4

- C1. It was kind of Mary and Alice to help us.
C2. I'm sure they were glad to do it.
C 1. We were lucky to have such good assistants, weren't we?
C2. Yes, and it was pleasant to work with them, I thought.

Conversation 5

- C1. Is Chai willing to go with the visitors tomorrow?
C2. Yes, he said he'd be delighted to do it.
C1. It's nice of him to help us this way.
C2. Yes, it is we're fortunate to have such a good friend.

Conversation 1

C1. This food is too hot to eat.

C2. Be careful it's hot enough to burn your tongue.

C1. It will be cool enough to eat if we wait a few minutes.

C2. Yes, but let's not wait until it's too cool to enjoy.

Conversation 2

C1. The man's explanation was too complicate to understand.

C2. He doesn't speak slowly enough for us to take note either.

C1. He get too excite to remember us students I think.

C2. Are you brave enough to ask him to repent everything?

Conversation 3

C1. The wind ids really strong to day.

C2. I'm afraid it's too strong for us to consider going sailing.

C1. Definitely it's blowing hard enough to tip a boat over.

C2. Maybe it will get calm enough later for us to go out.

Conversation 4

C1. I could finish all the work this afternoon.

C2. It was really too much to finish in one day.

C1. To tell the truth, there was enough work to keep me busy two day.

C2. But you're experienced enough to do it faster than anyone else.

Conversation 5

C1. Why doesn't the company try this new method of production?

C2. The new method is too dangerous to be considered.

C1. Then will the company continue to use the old method?

C2. Yes, the old method is still safe enough to be used.

Conversation 1

- C1. Whom is Mary talking to?
C2. She's talking to be her cousin.
C1. What's she talking about?
C2. She's talking about her new job.

Conversation 2

- C1. What are Somsak and Suksan arguing about?
C2. They're arguing about politics.
C1. What's Somsak objecting to?
C2. He's objecting to some of Suksan's statements.

Conversation 3

- C1. What part of the lesson did you have trouble with?
C2. I had trouble with several parts.
C1. Whom did you explain your problems to?
C1. I explain them to Mr. Suksan.

Conversation 4

- C1. What does Somsak devote his spare time to.
C2. He devote most of it to his hobbies.
C1. What does he concentrate on mostly?
C2. On photography, I think.

Conversation 5

- C1. Whom does that woman remind you of?
C2. Is it somebody I work with?
C1. No, somebody you're very friendly with.
C2. Now I know you mean Mary vasna.

Conversation 1

- C1. What did they complain about?
C2. They complained about all the noise.
C1. Whom did you refer them to?
C1. I referred them to the manager.

Conversation 2

- C1. What are you upset about?
C2. About the things you said
C1. Is it something I should apologize for?
C2. It certainly is.

Conversation 3

- C1. Whom did you get the information from?
C2. From my friend Somsak.
C1. Is he a person you can rely on to be accurate?
C2. That's something I'm very sure of.

Conversation 4

- C1. Whom were you quarreling with?
C2. I was quarreling with another student.
C1. What were you quarreling with him about?
C2. About the coming election.

Conversation 5

- C1. Whom did Vasna disagree with?
C2. She disagreed with Mr. Surphong.
C1. What did she disagree with him on?
C2. On the subject of foreign relations

Conversation 1

C.1 When is your first class?

C.2 At ten after nine.

C.1 When will you come back here, then?

C.2 About ten twelve

Conversation 2

C.1 Will be back in ten fifteen minutes.

C.2 How long has she been out of the office?

C.1 She's been out since ten o'clock.

C.2 Then she's Been out for an hour or more.

Conversation 3

C.1 I got to the cafeteria around noon.

C.2 I was there, but I didn't see you.

C.1 I think I left a few minutes after twelve.

C.2 I must have just missed you, then.

Conversation 4

C.1 Our friends will meet us here

C.2 Will they come here right after lunch?

C.1 No, they won't be here until three o'clock.

C.2 Then I'll comer a little before three.

Conversation 5

C.1 Let's call Mary.

C.2 Let's not call her right now.

C.1 Maybe this is a bad time to call.

C.2 Let's wait until seven or seven thirty. ♣ ♣ ♣ Our of sight, out of mind ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C.1 How much are the bananas?

C.2 I beg your pardon.

C.1 How much do the Bananas cost?

C.2 Fifteen Bahts.

Conversation 2

C.1 I'd like a bag of onions and a jar of olives.

C.2 Do you need fruit, apples, lemons, plums?

C.1 Perhaps a box of cherries and a bunch of grapes.

C.2 I'll put all this in a box with your other groceries.

Conversation 3

C.1 Forget to buy some rice.

C.2 How much do you want?

C.1 Would you please get me two Bahts

C.2 All right. A two-Baht bag.

Conversation 4

C.1 Don't you need milk or cream?

C.2 Yes Let's get a pint of cream and two quarts of milk.

C.1 We can get a two-quart container.

C.2 Let's get some sour cream too.

Conversation 5

C.1 Please give me bottle of milk.

C.2 All of our milk is in cartons.

C.1 Don't you need milk or cream?

C.2 Cartons are all right, but I prefer bottles.

Conversation 1

C.1 I'm afraid we're going to be late.

C.2 How much time is there left?

C.1 We've got about thirty or forty minutes.

C.2 That should be plenty of time.

Conversation 2

C.1 Whom are you waiting for?

C.2 We're waiting for our friend.

C.1 What are you looking so angry for?

C.2 Because she's twenty minutes late already.

Conversation 3

C.1 Aren't we going to be late for the meeting?

C.2 No. I think we'll be on time.

C.1 Well, I want to be there in time to get a good seat.

C.2 The meeting doesn't start for another twenty minutes.

Conversation 4

C.1 Isn't Harry here yet?

C.2 Here he comes now.

C.1 Eight forty-five, late as usual.

C.2 Well, we can still get to there on time.

Conversation 5

C.1 Are we late or not?

C.2 No. In fact we're early according to my watch.

C.1 Hadn't we better go inside?

C.2 All right, but we're really about a half an hour early.

♣ ♣ ♣ More beautiful, more dangerous ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C.1 Could you tell me the time, please?

C.2 Certainly. It's _____ (A) _____.

C.1 My watch says _____ (B) _____.

C.2 Then your watch is _____ (C) _____.

(A)	(B)	(C)
3:10	Five after three	Five minutes slow
4:15	Four twenty	Five minutes fast
12:45	eighteen to one	Three minutes slow
9:05	nine oh-five	right on time
1:30	one o'clock	help an hour off
7:55	five after seven	ten minutes off
2:00	one o'clock	an hour behind
8:45	twelve fifteen	not operating

Conversation Drill 2A.

C1 Where's your brother?

C.2 I think he's _____ (A) _____ now.

C.1 Will he come back here _____ (B) ?

C.2 Yes. I think so.

(A)	(B)	
at the store	very soon.	
at work	before five o'clock	
at his office	at the usual time	
at school	within an hour	
at the library	in the afternoon	
at church	at six fifteen	at the factory in time for dinner

Conversation 1

C.1 When does February have twenty-nine days?

C.2 In leap year.

C.1 How often is there a leap year?

C.2 Every fourth year?

Conversation 2

C.1 How many days are there in leap year?

C.2 There are three hundred and sixty-six.

C.1 How many weeks are there in a year?

C.2 There are fifty-two weeks in a year.

Conversation 3

C.1 What are the seasons in this country?

C.2 Winter, spring, summer, and fall.

C.1 How many months are there in a season?

C.2 There are three months in each season.

Conversation 4

C.1 Today is the first day of spring.

C.2 I didn't realize it

C.1 Aren't you glad it's here?

C.2 I'm always glad when winter is over.

Conversation 5

C.1 The weather is perfect today, isn't it?

C.2 Yes. I like this season of the year very much.

C.1 Most people like this season best of all, don't they?

C.2 Well, I'm sure a lot of people do.

♣ ♣ ♣ All men, great and little, must die ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation drill 1

C.1 What day is today?

C.2 It's (A) today?

C.1 What's the date?

C.2 It's (B) .

(A)

(B)

Tuesday

March fifteenth.

Thursday

October twenty-first

Sunday

September thirtieth

Friday

the fourteenth of December

Conversation Drill 1

C.1 I know about the seasons in the United States now.

C.2 Then when does (A) begin?

C.1 It begins in (B)

C. 2 That's right. It begins in (B)

(A)

(B)

spring

March

fall

September

summer

June

winter

December

Conversation Drill 3

C.1 I'm familiar with the seasons already.

C.2 What are the names of the _____(A)_____months then?

C.1 They're _____(B)_____.

A.2 Right _____(B)_____are the _____(A)_____ months.

Conversation 1

C.1 What floor is your apartment on?

C.2 It's on the third floor.

C.1 Is the building a walk-up?

C.2 No, it has a small elevator.

Conversation 2

C.1 How large is your apartment?

C.2 It has four and a hall rooms.

C.1 Then you have two bedrooms.

C.2 Right. A living room, a kitchen, two bedrooms, and a bath.

Conversation 3

C.1 Is this your apartment?

C.2 Yes, it is.

C.1 How many bedrooms do you have?

C.2 Two big ones and one small one.

Conversation 4

C.1 What's a cooperative, apartment.

C.2 In a cooperative, you actually buy the apartment.

C.1 Just as you would buy a house?

C.2 Yes, then you only pay maintenance casts each month.

Conversation 5

C.1 Do you lie your new apartment?

C.2 Yes, I like the service in the building to.

C.1 Are there doorman and guards?

C.2 Yes, and the building is close to the shopping areas.

♣ ♣ ♣ All men are brothers ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C.1 How much did you pay for your house?

C.2 It costs eighteen thousand dollars, and we've spent another two thousand on repairs.

C.1 Did you have trouble getting a mortgage?

C.2 No, We paid four thousand down, and the bank lent us the rest.

Conversation 2

C.1 Do you prefer a one-story or a two-story house?

C.2 One-story, I think.

C.1 I do too, because there aren't stairs to climb.

C.2 But one-story houses take more land.

Conversation 3

C.1 Your house is very large.

C.2 Yes, we have enough room for guests now.

C.1 Our house is too small.

C.2 You don't have enough room, do you?

Conversation 4

C.1 Where's the bathroom?

C.2 The bathroom is opposite that big bedroom.

C.1 Is this the kitchen?

C.2 Yes, it's a big kitchen, isn't it?

Conversation 5

C.1 I enjoy having a house in the suburbs.

C.2 It's wonderful to have trees and a big yard.

C.1 The children can play outside most of the time.

C.2 And it's so much cleaner than in the city.

Conversation 1

C.1 Could you give me the number of the Best Bag company?

C.2 Is that in the city or in the suburbs?

C.1 In the city, On Tenth street.

C.2 Just a moment please.

Conversation 2

C.1 What's the telephone number of Pan-Eastern Airways?

C.2 Just a moment please.

C.1 Thank you, operator.

C.2 That number is Hillside 23562

Conversation 3

C.1 I'd Like to speak to chamnong please.

C.2 What number are you calling?

C.1 089-9482217

C.2 Sorry. you' ve got the wrong number.

Conversation 4

C.1 May I speak to the director please?

C.2 Who's calling please?

C.1 Tell hem it's his friend from Mysore.

C.2 Just a moment, please.

Conversation 5

C.1 I'd like to speak to Mr. chamnong please.

C.2 May I ask who's calling, please?

C.1Tell him it's his assistant.

C.2 Please hold the line while I see if he's in.

♣ ♣ ♣ Men are equal ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C.1 Do you wish some assistance?

C.2 Yes. How much is that pen?

C.1 This one or that one?

C.2 The one next to the black one.

Conversation 2

C.1 May I help you?

C.2 Yes. I'd like to look at pens.

C.1 Certainty. Futon pens or ball-point pens?

C.2 I'm looking for a good fountain pen.

Conversation 3

C.1 Could you help me, please?

C.2 What can I do for you?

C.1 Could I look at the wristwatch in this case?

C.2 Just one moment, please while I get the key.

Conversation 4

C.1 Hello. Are you waited on?

C.2 No. I'd like a ream of typing paper, please.

C.1 Will there be anything else?

C.2 No. believe that's all, thank you.

Conversation 5

C.1 Is someone helping you?

C.2 I beg your pardon?

C.1 Could I help you with anything?

C.2 No, thanks. Someone is already waiting on me.

♣ ♣ ♣ Money finds friends ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C.1 What store did you go to yesterday?

C.2 Went to the Central Department Stores.

C.1 Do they have a good variety of things to choose from?

C.2 They have lots to choose from, it's all very expensive.

Conversation 2

C.1 What were you doing at that department store?

C.2 I was shopping for a new suitcase.

C.1 What was your friend doing there?

C.2 She was trying to find a coat.

Conversation 3

C.1 Have to go shopping.

C.2 Do you know what you're going to buy?

C.1 Not yet, but I hope to after shopping.

C.2 I hate to go shopping, but I guess it's necessary.

Conversation 4

C.1 What time do the store close?

C.2 Most of them close at six o'clock.

C.1 Do we still have time to go shopping?

C.2 Yes, It's only four fifteen now.

Conversation 5

C.1 It seems I always have to buy a lot of things.

C.2 It always seems that way to me too.

C.1 I always need so many little things.

C.2 They add up to a lot of money, don't they?

♣ ♣ ♣ Keep company with the good, not with the bad ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C1. I'd like to go to Big C supercenter.

C2. How I can go there?

C1. You can go by bus.

C2. Thank you very much.

Conversation 2

C1. I'd like to buy a pair of trousers.

C2. Do you think they'd have any that fit me?

C1. Shall we have a look in the "large size" corner?

C2. O'k shall we go.

Conversation 3

C1. The Shop girl says the material is soft to the touch.

C2. May I try them on?

C1. Sure. The fitting room is over there.

C2. Are they a little tight?

Conversation 4

C1. The size is just right.

C2. But the colors a bit plain isn't it?

C1. Do they have any other colors in this design?

C2. Yes, any other colors in this size not available.

Conversation 5

C1. Unfortunately there are no others.

C2. Shall we go to other Boots?

C1. Where shall we go?

C2. Shall we have a look in another stores.

Conversation 1

C.1 Where do you do your shopping?

C.2 I usually start at the Central Department Store?

C.1 What do you think of their selection?

C.2 They have a good selection and their prices are low too.

Conversation 2

C.1 They're have a big sale at the Greenfield Shopping Center.

C.2 Anything in particular in sale?

C.1 Well, they advertise linens and house furnishing.

C.2 I suppose there'll be crowds of people in the store.

Conversation 3

C.1 Spent the afternoon shopping for clothes.

C.2 Did you buy your coat?

C.1 Well' I found an excellent raincoat, and bought some shoes.

C.2 That reminds me that I have to go shopping soon.

Conversation 4

C.1 Where did you buy your coat?

C.2 I bought it at the Fifth Avenue Store-but a long time ago.

C.1 About how much did it cost?

C.2 At the moment, I've forgotten how much it cost.

Conversation 5

C.1 Why did you choose the green one?

C.2 To tell the truth, I really didn't have much choice in my size.

C.1 Excuse my asking, but how much did you pay for it?

C.2 It was on sale, and paid only forty-dollars.

♣ ♣ ♣ Use your head, not your heart ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C1. I'd like to go to the Mall supercenter.

C2. How can I go there?

C1. You can go by bus.

C2. Thank you very much.

Conversation 2

C1. I'd like to buy a pair of trousers.

C2. Do you think they'd have any that fit me?

C1. Shall we have a look in the "large size" corner?

C2. O'k shall we go.

Conversation 3

C1. The Shop girl says the material is soft to the touch.

C2. May I try them on?

C1. Sure. The fitting room is over there.

C2. Are they a little tight?

Conversation 4

C1. The size is just right.

C2. But the colors a bit plain isn't it?

C1. Do they have any other colors in this design?

C2. Yes, any other colors in this size not available.

Conversation 5

C1. Unfortunately there are no others.

C2. Shall we go to Boots?

C1. Where shall we go?

C2. Shall we have a look in another stores.

♣ ♣ ♣ Good luck comes behind bad luck ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C1. I'd like to go to Tesco Lotus supercenter.

C2. How can I go there?

C1. You can go by bus.

C2. Thank you very much.

Conversation 2

C1. I'd like to buy a pair of trousers.

C2. Do you think they'd have any that fit me?

C1. Shall we have a look in the "large size" corner?

C2. O'k shall we go.

Conversation 3

C1. The Shop girl says the material is soft to the touch.

C2. May I try them on?

C1. Sure. The fitting room is over there.

C2. Are they a little tight?

Conversation 4

C1. The size is just right.

C2. But the colors a bit plain isn't it?

C1. Do they have any other colors in this design?

C2. Yes, any other colors in this size not available.

Conversation 5

C1. Unfortunately there are no others.

C2. Shall we go to Boots?

C1. Shall we go?

C2. Shall we have a look in another stores.

Conversation 1

C1. I'd like to go to Makro supercenter.

C2. How can I go there?

C1. You can go by bus.

C2. Thank you very much.

Conversation 2

C1. I'd like to buy a pair of trousers.

C2. Do you think they'd have any that fit me?

C1. Shall we have a look in the "large size" corner?

C2. O'k shall we go.

Conversation 3

C1. The Shop girl says the material is soft to the touch.

C2. May I try them on?

C1. Sure. The fitting room is over there.

C2. Are they a little tight?

Conversation 4

C1. The size is just right.

C2. But the colors a bit plain isn't it?

C1. Do they have any other colors in this design?

C2. Yes, any other colors in this size is not available.

Conversation 5

C1. Unfortunately there are no others.

C2. Shall we go to Boots?

C1. Where shall We go?

C2. Shall we have a look in another stores.

Conversation 1

C1. I'd like to go to Klang Plaza supercenter.

C2. How can i go there ?

C1. You can go by bus.

C2. Thank you very much.

Conversation 2

C1. I'd like to bay a pair of trousers.

C2. Do you think they'd have any that fit me?

C1. Shall we have a look in the "large size" corner?

C2. O'k shall we go?

Conversation 3

C1.The Shop girl says the material is soft to the touch.

C2. May I try them on?

C1. Sure. The fitting room is over there.

C2. Are they a little tight?

Conversation 4

C1. The size is just right.

C2. But the colors a bit plain isn't it?

C1. Do they have any other colors in this design?

C2. Yes, any other colors in this size is not available.

Conversation 5

C1. Unfortunately there are no others.

C2. Shall we go to other Boots?

C1. Where shall we go?

C2. Shall we have a lock in another stares.

Conversation 1

C1. I'd like to go to Night BAZAAR supercenter.

C2. How can I there?

C1. You can go by bus.

C2. Thank you very much.

Conversation 2

C1. I'd like to buy a pair of trousers.

C2. Do you think they'd have any that fit me?

C1. Shall we have a look in the "large size" corner?

C2. O'k shall we go?

Conversation 3

C1. The Shop girl says the material is soft to the touch.

C2. May I try them on?

C1. Sure. The fitting room is over there.

C2. Are they a little tight?

Conversation 4

C1. The size is just right.

C2. But the colors a bit plain isn't it?

C1. Do they have any other colors in this design?

C2. Yes, any other colors in this size not available.

Conversation 5

C1. Unfortunately there are no others.

C2. Shall we go to Boots?

C1. When shall we go?

C2. Shall we have a look in another shop?

Conversation 1

C.1 What would you like to see?

C.2 I'd like to see your overcoats, please?

C.1 What kind of overcoats would you like to see?

C.2 I'd like to see your winter overcoats-probably wool.

Conversation 2

C.1 I'd like to look at your sweaters, if I could.

C.2 Certainly. Any particulars style

C.1 Could see me of the new style, please?

C.2 Of course please step right this way

Conversation 3

C.1 I'm interested in seeing your summer suits.

C.2 What color did you have in mind?

C.1 White, or some light color, I think.

C.2 Step over to this other room with me, would you please?

Conversation 4

C.1 That coat you have on now seems to fit you very well.

C.2 What kind of material is this?

C.1 It's a mixture-cotton and wool.

C.2 I'm not sure it's heavy enough for the fall weather.

Conversation 5

C.1 Here's a very popular kind of sport coat--the most recent Thing.

C.2 I notice there isn't much padding in the shoulders.

C.1 No. It has a natural shoulder line.

C.2 I like the narrow lapels and the stitching.

♣ ♣ ♣ Kindness begets kindness ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C.1 How much does this pen cost?

C.2 I beg your pardon.

C.1 How much is this pen?

C.2 It's four bahts and fifty strangs.

Conversation 2

C.1 How much is this leather billfolds?

C.2 It's five twenty-five.

C.1 Does that include the tax?

C.2 It's five forty-four including tax.

Conversation 3

C.1 This briefcase costs five fifty.

C.2 That's fine. I'll take it.

C.1 Will there be anything else?

C.2 I don't believe so, thank you.

Conversation 4

C.1 We're having a sale on leather goods today.

C.2 Are office supplies on sale too?

C.1 Yes. Prices have been reduced from 20 to 40 percent.

C.2 I notice the sale prices are marked in red ink.

Conversation 5

C.1 How much are these things all together?

C.2 Lets see. That'll be twenty-one fifty.

C.1 I'd like to charge them to my account, please.

C.2 Fine. Could you give me your name and address?

♣ ♣ ♣ Your dress and hand writing show your character ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C.1 How much are yours silly sir?

C.2 Twenty-five Strang a baht.

C.1 How much would five bahts cost?

C.2 Five bahts would be a baht and a quarter.

Conversation 2

C.1 What does that pin cost?

C.2 It's twenty-one bahts plus tax.

C.1 How much for the small one next to it.

C.2 That one costs twelve fifty.

Conversation 3

C.1 What's the regular price for that refrigerator?

C.2 The list price is two hundred forty.

C.1 Are you selling it at a discount?

C.2 Yes. The discount price is one ninety-nine.

Conversation 4

C.1 What are you asking for that antique mirror?

C.2 That's one hundred fifty bahts.

C.1 Isn't that rather expensive?

C.2 Not really Mirrors of that type are quite rare.

Conversation 5

C.1 What would it cost to have this chair repaired?

C.2 I'd estimate sixty to seventy bahts.

C.1 How much would it cost too replace it with a new one?

C.2 Probably around a hundred bahts.

♣ ♣ ♣ A bad worker blames his tool ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C.1 Can you come along with us tomorrow?

C.2 I think I can borrow enough money to go.

C.1 Why couldn't you go last Thursday?

C.2 Because I couldn't afford it.

Conversation 2

C.1 How much money do you have?

C.2 Not very much.

C.1 Do you have many Bahts bills?

C.2 Not very many, I'm afraid.

Conversation 3

C.1 You look upset about something.

C.2 I think I've lost my money.

C.1 Oh, that's what's bothering you.

C.2 It's a good reason to be upset, isn't it?

Conversation 4

C.1 Are you sure you lost your again?

C.2 I'm sure I did..

C.1 Would you please look again?

C.2 I will, but I'm sure it's not here.

Conversation 5

C.1 How many pennies did have in your bank?

C.2 I had exactly five hundred of them.

C.1 What did you do with them?

C.2 Put them in rolls of fifty Bahts each.

♣ ♣ ♣ No one too old to learn ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C.1 Have you make very much money this year?

C.2 Not an awful lot.

C.1 How hard have you tried?

C.2 Not as hard as I could have, I m afraid.

Conversation 2

C.1 How much did you make this week?

C.2 Sixty-two Bahts.

C.1 Is that your take-home pay?

C.2 Yes, it is.

Conversation 3

C.1 We've get to pay a lot bills.

C.2 And I've got to pay my rent today.

C.1 Money goes very fast these days, doesn't it?

C.2 It certainly de's.

Conversation 4

C.1 Did you sell your car?

C.2 Yes, I sold it my tried Bob.

C.1 Did you put the money in the bank?

C.2 I deposited part of it and spent the rest.

Conversation 5

C.1 Do you have an account at that bank?

C.2 I've got a special checking account.

C.1 How much do you have to keep in the account?

C.2 There's no minimum.

♣ ♣ ♣ Put the right man on the right job ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

- C1. Where is telephone office?
C2. You can go Jomphol Road.
C1. Hello! I want to send a telegram.
C2. May I please have a form?

Conversation 2

- C1. How much is it per word?
C2. It is 4 Bahts per word.
C1. Ok. I will be it.
C2. I'd like to send this by cable.

Conversation 3

- C1. How long will a cable to India take?
C2. Ha! It is one more week.
C1. May I send by air mail.?
C2. Yes, you can do that.

Conversation 4

- C1. If I send by air it is or expensive?
C2. It is very cheep.
C1. Who do you want to send to?
C2. I want to send to my friend.

Conversation 5

- C1. What your friend do in India?
C2. She is a student.
C1. How long your friend leave in India?
C2. She leave in India two year ago.

Conversation 1

C1.I'd a room for tonight.

C2.What is the room do you want?

C1.I'd like a single room with twin beds.

C2. Do you have a reservation?

Conversation 2

C1.I have a reservation.

C2.I have reservation two rooms.

C1.A single and a double.

C2.We'd like a room in the front.

Conversation 3

C1.Ok. A single and a double available for you.

C2.I'd like a room facing the sea.

C1.It must be quiet.

C2.I want to do my work.

Conversation 4

C1.I want the quiet room.

C2. Is there a television in the room?

C1. Yes, it is amiable.

C2. I'd like a suit.

Conversation 5

C1.How much per night?

C2.For night 8 hundred Bahts.

C1.Do you want some drink?

C2.I want **Singha beer**.

Conversation 1

C1.I'd like to reserve a table for four.

C2.We'll come at nine.

C1.I'd like to book table for four at 2 p.m.

C2.My name is Chamnong.

Conversation 2

C1.Is there a table in the middle room.

C2.Is there a table by the window?

C1.May I see the menu, please?

C2.I want something light.

Conversation 3

C1.We are in a hurry.

C2.What is your dish of the day?

C1.What do you want the food?

C2. I'd like an appetizer first.

Conversation 4

C1.What is the speciality of food?

C2. Somtum.

C1. Can you tell me what is that?

C2. Seafood.

Conversation 5

C1.What kinds of seafood do you have?

C2.I have prawns or crabs.

C1.Do you have bouillon fish?

C2.Yes, I have.

Conversation 1

C.1 Could you lend me a Bahts until tomorrow?

C.2 I can if you have change for a five.

C.1 wash I did, but don't.

C.2 well, we can get it changed easily.

Conversation 2

C.1 I need about ten Bahts.

C.2 What do you need it for?

C.1 I need it for books and supplies.

C.2 O.K. I'll lend it to you.

Conversation 4

C.1 Could I borrow some money from you for a few days?

C.2 How much do you need?

C.1 Could you spare four or five Bahts?

C.2 Yes, but I'll need the money myself before next week.

Conversation 4

C.1 What did you need the money for yesterday?

C.2 I wanted t for a new suit.

C.1 Did you get the money?

C.2 Yes. I borrowed it from a friend.

Conversation 5

C.1 How much change have you got?

C.2 Two quarters, two nickels, and a dime.

C.1 That's not enough to change this Bahts bill.

C.2 I'll lend you all of this change f you want it.

♣ ♣ ♣ Where there is a will, there is away ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C.1 Please give me nine five-strang stamps.

C.2 Here they are.

C.1 How much is that?

C.2 Forty-five strangs

Conversation 2

C.1 I'd like to mail this package.

C.2 How do you want to send it.

C.1 By regular mail.

C.2 That 'll. Be eighty-nine strangs.

Conversation 3

C.1 Want to send this letter special delivery.

C.2 All right. I'll weigh it.

C.1 How much will it t go that way?

C.2 It'll cost fifty-five strang.

Conversation 4

C.1 What's the fastest way to send this package?

C.2 Airmail special, but it'll be expensive.

C.1 How much will it cost to send it airmail special?

C.2 Just a moment. I'll weigh it and see.

Conversation 5

C.1 Do you envelopes here?

C.2 Only envelopes with stamps printed on them.

C.1 Can I buy bolos of stamps here too?

C.2 Yes, you can.

♣ ♣ ♣ There is no medicine for the fool ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C.1 How much are the banana?

C.2 I beg your pardon.

C.1 How much do the banana?

C.2 Fifteen Strang a Bahts.

Conversation 2

C.1 I'd like a bag of onions and a jar of alive.

C.2 Do you need fruit-apples, lemons, plums?

C.1 Perhaps a box of cherries and a bunch of grapes.

C.2 I'll put all this in a box with your other groceries.

Conversation 3

C.1 Forgot to buy some rice.

C.2 How much do you want?

C.1 Would you please get me two Bahts.

C.2 All right. A two-Baht bag.

Conversation 4

C.1 Don't you need milk or cream?

C.2 Yes. Let's get a pint of cream and two quarts of milk.

C.1 We can get a two-quart container.

C.2 Let's get some sour cream too.

Conversation 5

C.1 Please give me bottles of milk.

C.2 All four milk is in cartons.

C.1 Don't you need milk or cream?

C.2 All of our milk is in cartons.

Conversation 1

C.1 What do you call a big grocery store like this?

C.2 It's called a "supermarket."

C.1 It's convenient to see everything and pick out what you want.

C.2 Having these cars to put things in is convenient too.

Conversation 2

C.1 How about fish tonight-salmon, tuna fish, trout?

C.2 I notice the clams and oysters are fresh today.

C.1 That sounds very good.

C.2 Let's also get a pork Laos or Thai for tomorrow.

Conversation 3

C.1 Now we have sugar, salt, pepper, and flour.

C.2 We also need mustard, Vegas, and cannon.

C.1 I'll get those while you get cabbage and celery.

C.2 Fine meet you at the check-out counter.

Conversation 4

C.1 Would you please get me a bag of sugar?

C.2 Do you want two or five Bahts?

C.1 A two-Baht bag will be all right.

C.2 O.K. I'll meet you at the canned-food counter.

Conversation 5

C.1 How many eggs should we get?

C.2 Two dozen should be enough.

C.1 How much butter do you think we need?

C.2 One Baht Is enough, don't you thank?

♣ ♣ ♣ Much tall little work ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C.1 Are you Dr. Apichai?

C.2 No, That tall fellow is Dr. Apichai.

C.1 Do you mean the one over there with glasses?

C.2 Yes. The one with brown hair.

Conversation 2

C.1 Who's very handsome man?

C.2 What did you say?

C.1 Do you know who that man over there is?

C.2 If you mean the thin, rather dark man, that's Mr.Suksan.

Conversation 3

C,1 Do you recognize the girl talking to Mr.chamnong?

C.2 Of course I know the girl he' talking to.

C.1 Well then, whom is he talking to?

C.2 That's Dorothy Jones, Mary's good friend.

Conversation 4

C.1 What 's that man's name-the man that's holding the briefcase?

C.2 I know, but I can't remember it right now.

C.1 Where does he come from-Greece or Turkey perhaps?

C.2 One of the two, I think.

Conversation 5

C.1 Do you know the man over there by the door?

C.2 I do, but I can't remember his name at the moment.

C.1 Isn't he a famous musician?

C.2 He's either a musician or painter.

♣ ♣ ♣ A little learning is a dangerous thing ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C.1 How old your son?

C.2 He's seventeen years old.

C.1 Is your daughter older or younger than your son?

C.2 Younger. She's only fifteen.

Conversation 2

C.1 Have you got many relative here?

C.2 Yes. An aunt and an uncle and four grandparents.

C.1 Do your aunt and uncle have children?

C.2 Yes. I have three cousins-two boys and a girl.

Conversation 3

C.1 Do you have a picture of your family?

C.2 Yes, I've got one right here.

C.1 You have a very nice family.

C.2 Thank you.

Conversation 4

C.1 Suksan looks like his father.

C.2 Do you and your father look alike?

C.1 There's a like resemblance but not much.

C.2 I don't look like anyone at all in my family.

Conversation 5

C.1 How's your family?

C.2 They're all fine, thanks.

C.1 Are your nice and nephew still here?

C.2 Yes, They are They're still visiting me.

♣ ♣ ♣ A boater and a liar cousins ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C.1 Which house is your house?

C.2 Ours is last one on the block.

C.1 Is yours the red one or the blue one?

C.2 The blue one on the right side of street.

Conversation 2

C.1 What's the name of that book John referent to?

C.2 It's slipped my mind for the moment.

C.1 Who did he say was the author?

C.2 Some man whose name starts with a n or m.

Conversation 3

C.1 Which one of these are you going to choose?

C.2 I like the red one with the blue strips.

C.1 The one over there with black edges is nice too.

C.2 But the one we looked at first may be the best choice.

Conversation 4

C.1 The car over there by the streetlight is John's.

C.2 Which one do you mean-the old one or the new red one?

C.1 I beg your pardon.

C.2 Sorry. I don't know myself.

♣ ♣ ♣ There is no smoke without fire ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C.1 Are you writing a letter?

C.2 Yes. I'm writing to my family.

C.1 Do you write letters very often?

C.2 Yes. I write five or six letters a week.

Conversation 2

C.1 Do you write letters very often?

C.2 No. I hate it write letters.

C.1 It takes a lot of time.

C.2 It sure does.

Conversation 3

C.1 Did Suksan get alter?

C.2 Yes. He got one yesterday.

C.1 Does he get many letters?

C.2 Yes. He gets some every day.

Conversation 4

C.1 Suksan wrote me a long letter.

C.2 When did he write to you?

C.1 He sent the letter to me about a week ago.

C.2 He hasn't even sent me postcard yet!

Conversation 5

C.1 We wrote to Mary' sister last week.

C.2 Has she written to you yet?

C.1 No, she hasn't.

C.2 She wrote to me a few days ago.

♣ ♣ ♣ The first ding of love is the last of wisdom ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C.1 Have you written to your brother yet?

C.2 Yes, but I haven't mailed the letter yet.

C.1 I went to the post office half an hour ago,

C.2 Why didn't you tell me?

Conversation 2

C.1 Did your friend in Bangkok write to you?

C.2 Yes. I got a letter from her on Thursday.

C.1 What did she have to say?

C.2 She said the city was interesting and pretty.

Conversation 3

C.1 Did you write a reply to Peter's letter?

C.2 Yes. I wrote one on Friday.

C.1 Did you mention his last letter to you?

C.2 Yes. I said I'd enjoyed his letter a lot.

Conversation 4

C.1 What are you writing?

C.2 I'm writing a thank-you note to the Suksan.

C.1 What are you doing that for?

C.2 I had dinner with them, and it's customary to write a thank-you note.

Conversation 5

C.1 I wrote a letter to them applying for a job.

C.2 Was it hard to write your letter of application?

C.1 Yes. I wanted to sound modest but also mention my qualifications.

C.2 It's always hard to write about yourself.

♣ ♣ ♣ When in love everything is sweet ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C.1 Have you got any change?

C.2 What do you need?

C1. I need dollars.

C2. How much do you want?

Conversation 2

C.1 Can you change this five-Baht bill?

C.2 I'm sorry I don't have change.

C.1 What should I do?

C.2 Go to the cashier's desk.

Conversation 3

C.1 Can you change this ten-Baht bill?

C.2 How do you want it?

C.1 A five and five ones, please.

C.2 Here you are.

Conversation 4

C.1 Do you have change for a Baht bill?

C.2 Just a minute, and I'll see.

C.1 I need some quarters.

C.2 Yes. I can change it and give you two quarters.

Conversation 5

C.1 This is change machine.

C.2 Do you really get money from it?

C.1 Sure. Just put a fifty-strang piece in that slot.

C.2 It works! I've got a quarter, two dimes, and a nickel.

♣ ♣ ♣ Beautiful flowers are soon picked ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation Drill 1

C.1 I understand the American money system well.

C.2 The how many ----(A)-----are there in a ___(B)___?

C.1 There are ___(C)____,aren't there?

C.2 That's exactly right There are ___(C)___.

(A)	(B)	(C)
cents	nickel	five
cents	dime	ten
nickels	dime	two
cents	quarter	twenty-five
nickels	quarter	five
quarters	half dollar	two
dimes	half dollar	five
quarters	dollar	four
nickels	dollar	twenty

Conversation Drill 2

C.1 What do you need today?

C.2 I'd like _____(A)_____

C.1 Today _____(B)_____

C.2 That'll be all right, Thanks.

(A)	(B)
a pound of butter	butter is 650 a pound a pint of cream cream is 410 a pint
a quarter of milk	milk is 380 a quart a dozen eggs eggs are 870 a dozen
a loaf of bread	bread is 200 a loaf
a can of tuna fish	tuna is 850 a can
a are of jelly	jelly is 360 a jar a box of cookies cookies are 420 a box

Conversation 1

C.1 Is it raining now?

C.2 Yes, it is It's raining very hard.

C.1 Does it rain very much in this area?

C.2 Yes. It rains a lot in the spring and fall.

Conversation 2

C.1 How's the weather?

C.2 It's raining outside now.

C.1 Is it raining very hard?

C.2 No. It rains a lot in the spring and fall.

Conversation 3

C.1 What's the weather like outside?

C.2 I think it's going to rain.

C.1 It was nice a few hours ago

C.2 It was beautiful, wasn't it?

Conversation 4

C.1 How's the weather today?

C.2 It's quite cold and damp.

C.1 How are the winters here in general?

C.2 They're usually rather mild.

Conversation 5

C.1 Is it raining outside now?

C.2 Yes, it is, and it's quite cold.

C.1 I think I'll stay home today.

C.2 I certainly wish I could too.

♣ ♣ ♣ Did you enjoy your evening? ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C1. It was hot yesterday.

C2. But it's quite cool today.

C1. Yea, I'm wearing a sweater under my coat.

C2. I'm going to put on jacket.

Conversation 2

C1. It's freezing today!

C2. Yes, It's worse than yesterday.

C1. How cold is it?

C2. It's ten below.

Conversation 3

C1. What cold weather this is!

C2. It certainly is.

C1. What's ever snow in your country.

C2. It's five above.

Conversation 4

C1. You've seen a hurricane, haven't you?

C2. Once, a long time ago.

C1. Does it ever snow in your country?

C2. Only a few times a year.

Conversation 5

C1. Do you like the weather in this part of the country?

C2. Not really, but I'm adjusted to it now.

C1. Is the weather different in your part of the country?

C2. Yes: It never gets as cold there as it does here.

♣ ♣ ♣ I congratulate him on his success ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

- C1. It's a nice day isn't?
C2. Yes, It's warm and sunny for a change.
C1. I like this kind of weather.
C2. I quest everyone does.

Conversation 2

- C1. It's little windy today.
C2. I don't mind the wind.
C1. The sun certainly feels good.
C2. Especially after all that bad weather last week.

Conversation 3

- C1. The weather is good today.
C2. It's a little too warm for me.
C1. This kind of weather is good for the farmers.
C2. But I'm not a farmer.

Conversation 4

- C1. I wonder what the weather is going to be like tomorrow.
C2. The paper says it's going to be fair and sunny.
C1. Let's listen to the weather report on the radio.
C2. That's a good idea.

Conversation 5

- C1. It's very warm and sticky today.
C2. It's so humid! I wish it would rain.
C1. A good rain would cool things off a little.
C2. We need some rain to make things green.

♣ ♣ ♣ Love and pity are twins ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C1.Where you at temple last night?

C2.No, but I was at temple the night before last.

C1.Will you be at temple tomorrow night?

C2.No, but I'll be at temple the next night.

Conversation 2

C1.Didn't your friends leave the week before last?

C2.Right. They left just two weeks ago.

C1.Will they get back next week?

C2.Yes. According to them, they'll arrive a week from today.

Conversation 3

C1.Did Vasna get back last week?

C2.Yes. She got back in Friday.

C1.How long was she away?

C2.She was out of town for ten days.

Conversation 4

C1.When did George arrive n town?

C2.He flew in last Friday afternoon.

C1.John has been here since last Friday too.

C2.Both of them plan to leave the day after tomorrow.

Conversation 5

C1.How long have you been here?

C2.I've been here for two months.

C1.How often do you get here?

C2.I get to this city about twice a year.

♣ ♣ ♣ All men are brothers ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C1. How long have you worked in this office?

C2. I've worked here since May.

C1. How long ago did you finish school?

C2. I finished school three years ago.

Conversation 2

C1. Didn't you study English in school?

C2. Yes, but that was many years ago.

C1. How many years ago was it?

C2. At least six or seven.

Conversation 3

C1. Did your friend arrive here in the fall?

C2. Yes, they did. They got here in October.

C1. Do you know the exact date they arrived?

C2. Yes, I do. They got back on October eleventh.

Conversation 4

C1. Have you been living here very long?

C2. No. I've only been here since last spring.

C1. Are you expect to finish the work by tomorrow night?

C2. No. I'll probably leave for France in a month or two.

Conversation 5

C1. I worked on my report until midnight last night.

C2. Do you except to finish the work by tomorrow night?

C1. Well, I certainly can't finish it before that time.

C2. You'd better get someone to help you for a few hours today then.

♣ ♣ ♣ A drawing man catch at a straw ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C1. How much vacation time do you get?

C2. Only two weeks this year, but three weeks next year.

C1. We get four weeks a year after five years of service.

C2. I may take an extra week without pay this year.

Conversation 2

C1. Where do you plan to go for your vacation?

C2. I'm going to India.

C1. When will you be back?

C2. Probably in three or four weeks.

Conversation 3

C1. Are you going to take your vacation in June or July?

C2. I'm going to take it in July.

C1. Are you going to go to Europe?

C2. No, I'm going to go to South America.

Conversation 4

C1. Did you have a good vacation?

C2. Yes, I did. I had a wonderful time.

C1. What did you do?

C2. I visited some old friends in Florida.

Conversation 5

C1. You haven't been around for a long time.

C2. I've been away on a vacation.

C1. Everyone's been asking for you.

C2. It's nice to be missed.

♣ ♣ ♣ Fools and obstinate men make lawyers rich ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C1. Did you have a nice time over the weekend?

C2. I had lots of fun.

C1. What did you do?

C2. I did a lot of sight-seeing.

Conversation 2

C1. How long were you out of town?

C2. I was away for two weeks.

C1. When were you away?

C2. I took the time off in August.

Conversation 3

C1. How did you go to India last month?

C2. We went by plane.

C1. What kind of plane did you take?

C2. It was a jet.

Conversation 4

C1. Have you ever been to America.

C2. No I've never been there.

C1. Have you ever been to Canada?

C2. Yes I was there last summer.

Conversation 5

C1. Did your parents stay in Canberra for long?

C2. Yes. They stayed there for two months.

C1. Did they describe their trip to you?

C2. Yes, and they showed us a lot of Photographs.

♣ ♣ ♣ Our birth is nothing but our death begun ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C1. What did you have for breakfast?

C2. I had coffee, toast, and eggs.

C1. How did you have your eggs?

C2. Soft-boiled, as usual.

Conversation 2

C1. How about a cup of coffee?

C2. That sounds good.

C1. I always enjoy in coffee after work.

C2. I like it best in the morning.

Conversation 3

C1. Would you like to have an orange?

C2. Thanks, but I don't think so.

C1. Oranges are good for you.

C2. I know, but I had one about an hour ago.

Conversation 4

C1. Where did you have lunch today?

C2. I ate at the cafeteria with Suksan.

C1. Did you have a good lunch?

C2. Yes. I had a hot roast beef sandwich.

Conversation 5

C1. There's a cafeteria over there.

C2. Didn't you eat before?

C1. Yes, but I'm hungry again.

C2. Well, I'm still digesting my lunch.

♣ ♣ ♣ Fear always spring from ignorance ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C1.I'd like to reserve a table for three.

C2. May I have a table here?

C1.Yes, you can have here.

C1.May I have chicken salad?

Conversation 2

C1. What would you like to eat?

C2. I like to eat papaya salad.

C1. Is there a table in a corner?

C2. Is there a table by the window.

Conversation 3

C1. What salad do you have?

C2. We have papaya salad.

C1. What kinds of seafood do you have?

C2.We have some of prawns or crabs.

Conversation 4

C1.I want something light.

C2.I want chicken soup.

C1.Waiting for five minute.

C2.We are in a hurry.

Conversation 5

C1.What is your dish of the day?

C2.We have any food.

C1.What do you recommend?

C2. I'd like beer appetizer first.

Conversation 1

C1. I'd like to order breakfast.

C2. What can I bring you?

C1. I'd like coffee, scrambled eggs, and bacon.

C2. I'll bring the coffee first.

Conversation 2

C1. Please give me ham sandwich.

C2. Would you like it on rye bread or white?

C1. Rye bread, please. with mustard

C2. Here it is.

Conversation 3

C1. I'd like a piece of pie now and coffee later, please.

C2. Do you want cream for your coffee?

C1. Yes. Cream but no sugar.

C2. I'll bring the pie right away.

Conversation 4

C1. A hamburger and a cup of coffee, please.

C2. Here you are.

C1. How much do I owe you?

C2. Sixty-two Bahts

Conversation 5

C1. What did you order?

C2. I ordered a sandwich and a cup of coffee.

C1. What kind of sandwich did you order?

C2. A bacon, lettuce, and tomato sandwich.

Conversation 1

- C1. Could we have a table for your?
C2. There's a nice table right there by the window.
C1. May we also have the menu right away?
C2. I'll get the menu immediately.

Conversation 2

- C1. Would you cure for some roast beef?
C2. NO, I'll have sirloin steak.
C1. How do you like your steak?
C2. I'd prefer it medium rare.

Conversation 3

- C1. Would you like to have soup?
C2. Yes, creamed onion, please.
C1. Mashed, boiled, or French-friend potatoes?
C2. I'll have the Chicken-fried.

Conversation 4

- C1. What vegetables would you like with your dinner?
C2. Carrots, please, and corn with cream sauce.
C1. What kind of dressing do you want on your somtum?
C2. I believe I'll take Russian dressing tonight.

Conversation 5

- C1. Would you like to order a dresser?
C2. What kinds of pie do you have?
C1. Peach, lemon cream, and apple.
C2. I'd like lemon cream, please.

Conversation 1

C1. What'll you have sir?

C2. May I have a menu, please?

C1. A menu? Here you are sir.

C2. Now, I'll need a few minutes to look it over.

Conversation 2

C1. I'll have the sirloin steak listed here.

C2. How do you like your steak-well done?

C1. No. I'd prefer it medium rare.

C2. I'm sure you'll enjoy our steak.

Conversation 3

C1. Would you care for soup?

C2. Yes, I would, Vegetable soup, please.

C1. What would you like for your main course?

C2. I'm going to have beef stew for my main course.

Conversation 4

C1. Would you care for dessert after your main course?

C2. Possibly. What kind of pie do you have?

C1. Peach, banana cream, and blueberry chiffon.

C2. I think I'd like to try the banana cream.

Conversation 5

C1. Coffee, tea, or milk?

C2. Coffee- with the meal, please.

C1. Do you want cream and sugar?

C2. No. I'll take my coffee black.

♣ ♣ ♣ Receipt yourself first and other will respect you ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

- C1. I hope you're hungry tonight.
C2. I'm sure I'll have a good appetite.
C1. There's a menu right beside you.
C2. Thanks I see it.

Conversation 2

- C1. What do you usually have for dinner?
C2. Potatoes and some kind of meat.
C1. Do you ever have anything else?
C2. Oh, I have other thing-for example, fish, rice, and vegetables.

Conversation 3

- C1. The fish is delicious in this restaurant, it hear.
C2. It's a popular dish in this country.
C1. But I always choose steak if possible.
C2. Well, I'm going to have fish.

Conversation 4

- C1. Do you like vegetables?
C2. I like some but not all.
C1. What kind do you like?
C2. I like lettuce and radishes and a few others.

Conversation 5

- C1. Do you always drink test with your meals?
C2. Not always, but usually.
C1. How do you like your tea?
C2. With sugar and lemon.

♣ ♣ ♣ Bad excuse are worse than none ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C1. You look very pale.

C2. I feel rather dizzy, and I have a headache.

C1. Maybe you're catching a cold.

C2. You're probably right.

Conversation 2

C1. You went to the doctor today, didn't you?

C2. Yes. I go once a year for a checkup.

C1. What did he say?

C2. He said my health was good.

Conversation 3

C1. Have you put on weight recently?

C2. I probably have.

C1. Maybe you don't get enough exercise.

C2. I really don't but I'm careful about eating.

Conversation 4

C1. You certainly look very healthy to me.

C2. I've been feeling very well lately.

C1. Haven't you gotten a little heavier?

C2. Yes, I think I have.

Conversation 5

C1. You certainly look happy about something.

C2. I've lost some weight.

C1. You look much better.

C2. I feel better too..

♣ ♣ ♣ Ignorance never settles a question ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C.1 What would you like to see?

C.2 I'd like to see your overcoats, please?

C.1 What kind of overcoats would you like to see?

C.2 I'd like to see winter overcoats-probably wool.

Conversation 2

C.1 I'd like to look at your sweaters, if I could.

C.2 Certainly. Any particulars style.

C.1 could see me of the new style, please?

C.2 Of course please step right this way.

Conversation 3

C.1 I'm interested in seeing your summer suits.

C.2 What color did you have in mind?

C.1 White, or some light color, I thing

C.2 Step over to this other room with me, would you please?

Conversation 4

C.1 That caked you have on now seems to fit you very well.

C.2 What kind of material is this?

C.1 It's a mixture-cotton and wool.

C.2 I'm not sure it's heavy enough for the fall weather.

Conversation 5

C.1 Heroes a very popular kind of sport coat-the most recent thing.

C.2 I notice there isn't much padding in the shoulders.

C.1 No. it has a natural shoulder line.

C.2 I like the narrow lapels and the stitching in them.

♣ ♣ ♣ When money speaks, the truth is silent ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C.1 Hello! I am glad that I have meet you here.

C.2 I wanted to see you particularly.

C.1 It is fortunate! We have met them.

C.2 A few of us are arranging to have a picnic

Conversation 2

C.1 and we want you to come along.

C.2 Thank you, I should bee very glad to do so.

C.1 When is it be?

C.2 On the coming Saturday.

Conversation 3

C.1 Where do you intend to go for the picnic?

C.2 To Klang Plaza, Have you ever been there before?

C.1 No, I don't it pretty place?

C.2 Yes, it is very pretty pace.

Conversation 4

C.1 There we may enjoy the natural Scene.

C.2 Do we go by car walk?

C.1 We shall go by walk.

C.2 We shall meet at the laser on that day at 6.30 p.m.

Conversation 5

C.1 And please, you bring more money?

C.2 No, problem friend.

C.1 That's fine Good-bye for the present.

C.2 Good-bye see you again

♣♣♣ Desire hatch no rest ♣♣♣

Conversation 1

C.1 Do you have dinner at home?

C.2 Yes, I do. what about you?

C.1 I often have dinner at restaurant.

C.2 Eating at home it not pay.

Conversation 2

C.1 Eating in the restaurant is more expensive, isn't it?

C.2 Yes, it is, Buy more delicious too,

C.1 By the we, have you had your dinner yet?

C.2 No, not yet.

Conversation 3

C.1 What do you for dinner?

C.2 I usually have Soup?

C.1 Chicken Soup?

C.2 Any kind of soup as Chicken, onion, tomato, and vegetable soup.

Conversation 4

C.1 Do you cooking by yourself?

C.2 Yes, I do.

C.1 How is your parent's like?

C.2 They are like soup.

Conversation 5

C.1 In that case, lets have our dinner together.

C.2 What do you have for dinner?

C.1 We usually have soup too.

C.2 O.K. shall we going now.

♣ ♣ ♣ No roes without a thorn ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C.1 Excuse me, do you come from Japan?

C.2 No, I come from Thailand.

C.1 Then I must apologize, sir.

C.2 You look like a Japanese.

Conversation 2

C.1 Oh, are you Thai?

C.2 Yes, I come from Thailand.

C.1 Thailand? Oh, it used to be called Siam, isn't it?

C.2 Yes, You're right.

Conversation 3

C.1 I'm afraid you'll think I'm very stupid.

C.2 Buy it's rather difficult to tell the different of first.

C.1 I the same, I cant tell you whichof those people are Japanese.

C.2 Or which me Japan, and which one Thai.

Conversation 4

C.1 I've seen the movie of Anna and the king Siam.

C.2 It's very interesting.

C.1 That's the first make me know the name of Siam.

C.2 Yes, that is good

Conversation 5

C.1 Excuse me, what part of the Far East will you be visiting ?

C.2 We're not quiz sure yet.

C.1 Buy certainly Thailand.

C.2 Where do you like from ?

♣ ♣ ♣ A word to the wise is sufficient ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C.1 How much are the coconut?

C.2 I beg your pardon .

C.1 How much do the coconut?

C.2 fifteen Baths a pound

Conversation 2

C.1 I'd like a bag of onions and a jar of olives.

C.2 Do you need fruit-apples, lemons, plums?

C.1 Perhaps a box of cherries and a bunch of grapes .

C.2 I'll put all this in a box with your other groceries

Conversation 3

C.1 I forgot to buy come rice.

C.2 How much do you want ?

C.1 Would you please get me two pounds ?

C.2 All right A two-pound bag.

Conversation 4

C.1 don't you need milk or cream ?

C.2 Yes, Let's get a pint of cream and two quarts of milk .

C.1 We can get a two - quart container.

C.2 Let's get some sour cream too.

Conversation 5

C.1 Please give me two bottle of milk.

C.2 All of our milk is in cartons .

C.1 Cartons are all right, but I prefer bottle.

C.2 Cartons are more convenient, and there's deposit on bottles.

♣ ♣ ♣ It is the early bird that catches the worm ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C.1 I have a terrible headache today.

C.2 Have you taken any aspirin for it?

C.1 Yes. I'll get over it soon.

C.2 Lying down for a few minutes might help it too.

Conversation 2

C.1 I've got a cold in my head.

C.2 It's probable this terrible weather.

C.1 Yes. It's giving everyone a cold.

C.2 I hope I don't catch one.

Conversation 3

C.1 What are you taking for your cold?

C.2 Just the usual thing - water and fruit juice.

C.1 You'll be over it soon then.

C.2 I really hope you're right.

Conversation 4

C.1 You look tired Are you ill?

C.2 I think I've caught a cold.

C.1 How can you tell?

C.2 My throat is sore.

Conversation 5

C.1 You can't look very well.

C.2 I don't feel very well either.

C.1 Why don't you rest for a few minutes ?

C.2 I think I will.

♣ ♣ ♣ Success without obstacle is not 'Success ♣ ♣ ♣

Conversation 1

C.1 I think I've got a fever.

C.2 Do you feel very hot?

C.1 Yes. And I've been sweating a lot.

C.2 You'd better go to a doctor.

Conversation 2

C.1 I feel quite sick, doctor.

C.2 Can you tell me about it?

C.1 I've got a headache and stomach cramps.

C.2 I'd better take your temperature.

Conversation 3

C.1 Is the cut on my hand dangerous?

C.2 No, but there's a little infection.

C.1 What can you do about an infection?

C.2 I'll use an antibiotic, and it'll be gone by tomorrow.

Conversation 4

C.1 Have you ever had pneumonia?

C.2 Yes. I had it about two years ago.

C.1 Have you ever had measles?

C.2 No. I've never had measles.

Conversation 5

C.1 Do I have anything serious, Doctor?

C.2 Only a slight cold.

C.1 Will it last very long?

C.2 No, it'll probably go away in a day or two.

Conversation 1

C.1 How did you find your new job?

C.2 I went to employment agency.

C.1 Was it worth it to do it that way?

C.2 Yes.They were able to get me something good right away.

Conversation 2

C.1 I thing I'm going to change jobs.

C.2 What do you want to do that fore?

C.1 There's not enough chance to get ahead here.

C.2 But don't forget you're getting a pretty good salary.

Conversation 3

C.1 Did it take you long to apply for a job?

C.2 Too long in my opinion .

C.1 What did you have to do ?

C.2 Speak to people, fill out forms, and wait.

Conversation 4

C.1 Is Somsak going to quit his obi next month ?

C.2 No, he's going to quit next January.

C.1 Are his parent's going to support him then.

C.2 No, he isn't going to ask them for any money .

Conversation 5

C.1 I'd like to speak to the personnel manager, please.

C.2 May I ask what it's about?

C.1 I'd like to see him about the position advertised in today's newspaper.

C.2 Certainly. Somsak have a seat over there for a moment.

Conversation 1

C.1 How long has that man been over there at the desk.

C.2 About a minute or two, I think.

C.1 Can you find out what he wants?

C.2 I'll ask him right away.

Conversation 2

C.1 Has the secretary sent the letter yet?

C.2 Yes. She's already sent them the letter.

C.1 She still hasn't sent a copy of the letter to me.

C.2 I forgot tell you she gave me your copy.

Conversation 3

C.1 To Whom did you send the invoice.

C.2 I sent it to the General sales Company.

C.1 Specifically , Whom did you address it to?

C.2 I addressed it to the purchasing agent.

Conversation 4

C.1 Have you finished the report on current inventory yet?

C.2 No, I haven't but I certainly wish I had.

C.1 Why haven't you finished it?

C.2 I didn't have enough time to spend on it yesterday.

Conversation 5

C.1 I'm having some trouble with this sales volume report.

C.2 You didn't have any trouble with your report last week.

C.1 Well, there are some difficult parts in this one.

C.2 I'm sorry, but don't have any suggestions.

Conversation 1

C1. Excuse me where is state Bang?

C2. Ah. In front of the University.

C1. How I can go there?

C2. You can go by taxi.

Conversation 2

C1. Excuse me Where can I exchange foreign currency?

C2. Please go to window number one.

C1. Hello I'd like to change US dollars into Rupees.

C2. Yes, of course.

Conversation 3

C1. That's today's exchange rate?

C2. One dollar to 30 Rupees.

C1. How much would you like to change.

C2. One Thousand dollar. Please.

Conversation 4

C1. And could you also cash this travelers Check.

C2. May I see your passport?

C1. Here is my passport.

C2. Thank you how much Total.....Rupees.

Conversation 5

C1. How would you like that?

C2. Ok, thank you.

C1. Yes, number one already.

C2. Thank you very much.

Conversation 1

C.1 What did you spend all your time on today?

C.2 Checking the annual report.

C.1 Was everything in it all right?

C.2 No, I discovered several errors.

Conversation 2

C.1 How is the mail handled?

C.2 The executive secretary opens it and sorts it out.

C.1 Is any record kept of incoming mail?

C.2 Yes, everything is entered on the mail register.

Conversation 3

C.1 Do you receive many inquiries about your produce?

C.2 Yes, There are a good number every day.

C.1 You can't answer all of them personally, can you?

C.2 No, Unless they're obviously important, we send back a form letter.

Conversation 4

C.1 I'd like to dictate a letter to the TOYOTA company.

C.2 Just a moment please, while I get my shorthand notebook.

C.1 Would you also bring me the previous correspondence with them?

C.2 I've already put the file on your desk.

Conversation 5

C.1 I've been working very hard recently.

C.2 How come you've been working so hard?

C.1 I've been trying to impress my boss.

C.2 I hope you haven't been working in vain.

Conversation 1

C.1 Does Dr. Aphichai teach every day?

C.2 No. Only Monday, Wednesday and Friday.

C.1 Is Dr. Aphichai teaching right now?

C.2 No, he isn't He's working in his office.

Conversation 2

C.1 Why doesn't Somsak practice anymore?

C.2 He doesn't have much free time.

C.1 He used to have a lot of free time, time didn't he?

C.2 Yes, he did, but now he's going to the University every day.

Conversation 3

C.1 What are you studying this semester?

C.2 History, English, and math.

C.1 Which do you like best?

C.2 History really interests me the most.

Conversation 4

C.1 Not all students so their lessons carefully.

C.2 Well, I do mine carefully.

C.1 But your brother often does his at the last moment.

C.2 And my sister always does a day or two late.

Conversation 5

C.1 How come you aren't at the University today?

C.2 There aren't any classes this week.

C.1 Well, how come there aren't any classes?

C.2 This is our spring vacation.

Conversation 1

C.1 Why are you do worried?

C.2 My sister doesn't study hard enough.

C.1 Isn't she interested in the University?

C.2 The University interests her, but homework doesn't.

Conversation 2

C.1 I'm worried about my University work.

C.2 What's the problem?

C.1 I thing I'm going to fail the examinations.

C.2 Maybe you won't if you have more confidence.

Conversation 3

C.1 What are you going to study at the University?

C.2 Probably history and English.

C.1 You'll have to work hard.

C.2 Yes, I've heard that it's a difficult University.

Conversation 4

C.1 What did you apply for?

C.2 I applied for a scholarship.

C.1 What University did you apply to?

C.2 I applied to Eastern State College.

Conversation 5

C.1 I understand the boy applications were turned down.

C.2 Who turned them down?

C.1 I think the college admissions committee.

C.2 I'd advise them to try again.

Conversation 1

C.1 English is the hardest language in the world.

C.2 Why do you say that?

C.1 I can't understand it or speak it.

C.2 But this is only your first day in the English class?

Conversation 2

C.1 How do you pronounced this word in English?

C.2 It's pronounced "sign".

C.1 What 's a "sign".

C.2 It's a "public notice".

Conversation 3

C.1 What do you call this thing in English?

C.2 It's a "hammer".

C.1 What 's the word for the things you hit with hammer?

C.2 "Nails" you pound nails into wood with a hammer.

Conversation 4

C.1 How do you ask for help politely?

C.2 You say, "Could you help me, please?"

C.1 Is it all right to say, "Could you please help me?"

C.2 Yes, you can say it that way too.

Conversation 5

C.1 Can you understand spoken English very well.

C.2 I can understand you, but most people speak too fast.

C.1 How about speaking? Can you carry on a conversation?

C.2 I'm really not very fluent yet.

Conversation 1

C.1 Do you want learn English?

C.2 Yes, I do - very much.

C.1 Why do you want to learn English?

C.2 Because it'll be useful in the future.

Conversation 2

C.1 I want to learn English.

C.2 Then you much speak it.

C.1 Why much I speak it?

C.2 Because you want to learn it.

Conversation 3

C.1 Do you understand the sentence?

C.2 I don't understand it completely.

C.1 All right, then I'll repeat it.

C.2 Thank you very much.

Conversation 4

C.1 Did you understand what I said?

C.2 No, I didn't Would you please say it again?

C.1 Of course. I'll say it again slowly.

C.2 That will help a lot.

Conversation 5

C.1 Please write down Somsak' s address.

C.2 All right, but would you please speak very slowly?

C.1 Yes. Do you want me to spell each word too?

C.2 Not the number-only the names.

Conversation 1

C1. Can you tell me where is the railway station?

C2. Near is police station.

C1. You can go by Taxi.

C2. Thank you very much, sir.

Conversation 2

C1. Could you tell me where the ticket office is?

C2. You can by a ticket here.

C1. What time is the next train for holla leaving.

C2. The express leaves at 8.00 o'clock.

Conversation 3

C1. Thank you can I book a seat for a one way Tip on the limited express to Mysore.

C2. Certainly Smoking or non-smoking?

C1. No, Smoking please.

C2. One moment, please your in car 11 Seat number 6.

Conversation 4

C1. Which plat from is?

C2. Number fine you have 30 minutes before the train leaves.

C1. Thank you for Kindness.

C2. Not, at all.

Conversation 5

C1. How would you like that?

C2. OK, Thank you.

C1. Yes, number one already.

C2. Thank you very much.

Conversation 1

C1. Good morning Mr. Somsak.

C2. Good morning Mr. Sompong.

C1. I'm very glad to see you, please sit down.

C2. Thank you.

Conversation 2

C1. How are you?

C2. Yes, I'm fine thank you.

C1. Please make yourself comfortable.

C2. What can I do for you?

Conversation 3

C1. I should like to ask you advice about something.

C2. I'll be glad help you, if I can.

C1. What is it?

Conversation 4

C1. So I want to know something about the educational system of India.

C2. Did you mean about the public University or the Private University?

C1. The public University, sir.

C2. The system of public University is fairly University from everywhere.

Conversation 5

C1. I want to know how much I'll have to spend for the month.

C2. I'm not sure, I think it is'n't more than five thousand in a month.

C1. But you must make the most of you spending.

C2. Thank you very much for your advice sir.

Desire hath no rest

Conversation 1

- C1. I have there month for preparing to study abroad.
C2. Would you please suggest what I should learn now?
C1. You'd better concentrate on spoken English.
C2. Yes, thank you very much.

Conversation 2

- C1. To help you get used to spoken English.
C2. Because you'll need it to communicate with the people around.
C1. Shall I want till get to India of start practicing spoken English?
C2. No, you have to start it now.

Conversation 3

- C1. If you can get along with your people or Indian people here.
C2. I done say you can get along with Indian people there also.
C1. And how about the custom?
C2. That you might to be leaving from having contact with a lot of people.

Conversation 4

- C1. How many years for attention in University?
C2. For three years and then coming back.
C1. But there are difficult types of University you know.
C2. If you have the plan to go to the University.

Conversation 5

- C1. How long is the usual the University course?
C2. Four years for the usual University course.
C1. How much will be to pay for the Indian fees?
C2. I'm not sure, but it isn't more than eight hundred dollars a year.

Every one thinks his sack heaviest

Conversation 1

C1. Welcome aboard our aircraft hand in the first row.

C2. Your start is on he left.

C1. Thank you, do you serve a meal on flight.

C2. Yes, we do we'll serve dinner about on hour after the flight begin.

Conversation 2

C1. Do you have any thing I can read.

C2. I'll bring you same magazines, do you like magazines or newspaper.

C1. Yes Ok, magazines and Newspaper.

C2. What would you like to drink?

Conversation 3

C1. What would you like to drink?

C2. No, thank you.

C1. Yes, orange juice.

C2. I want to have some beer.

Conversation 4

C1. Will you take Indian food for the lunch?

C2. I prefer Thai food what is on the meal?

C1. We have chicken fire and fish,

C2. I'd like the fish, please.

Conversation 5

C1. How is it Indian food?

C2. Very tasty and to much.

C1. Where would you like to go?

C1. I'll going to University of Mysore.

Conversation 1

C1. Your passport, please.

C2. Here it is.

C1. Where are you come from?

C2. I come from Thailand.

Conversation 2

C1. What's the purpose of your deed?

C2. I'm here for study.

C1. How long do you plan to study in your country?

C2. I'll be here two years sir.

Conversation 3

C1. Where will you be staying in the city?

C2. We will be at University Hostel.

C1. How many person come with you?

C2. Five person, sir

Conversation 4

C1. That's all here is your passport I help you.

C2. Thank you very much.

C1. Ok, I'll go now.

C2. Good luck for you and your friend.

Conversation 5

C1. Excuse me where is University Hostel?

C2. Near is the Humanities Faculty.

C1. Look like are you hurry.

C2. Yes, I'm very tired, and I have no time.

Conversation 1

C1. Do you have anything to declare?

C2. No, nothing at all.

C1. Have you any cold and cigarettes?

C2. Yes, I have got some.

Conversation 2

C1. How much do you have got?

C2. Only a precious two carton of cigarette.

C1. That's all right have you got any expensive presents?

C2. Yes, I have got a carton of cigarettes for my Lecture.

Conversation 3

C1. Have you got any bill of the cart?

C2. Yes, I have, here it is.

C1. Ok. You are feed to pass.

C2. Thank you very much, Sir.

Conversation 4

C1. Hello, do you want a taxi?

C2. Yes, I want I'll go to Bobaya.

C1. How many person?

C2. Two person.

Conversation 5

C1. And how far is it from here?

C2. Maybe 50 kilometers from here.

C1. How much a taxi faire?

C2. 50 Rupee Sir.

Conversation 1

C1. I saw them about yesterday.

C2. Did they (A) you_____it

C1. Well, they(B) it

C2. I suppose that.

Conversation 2

(A)	(B)
blame.....for	complained about
advice.....of	commented on
encourage....in	inquired about
remind.....of	referred to
question.....about	spoke about
pay.....for	consented to
assist.....with	argued about

Conversation Drill 3

C 1.He’s going to see them tomorrow.

C2. Do you think he’ll (A) them_____that?

C1. He certainly ought to (B) it_____them.

C2. At any rate, he has to do something.

(A)	(B)
consult.....about	explain.....to
threaten.....with	suggest.....to
caution.....about	emphasize..to
excuse.....from	require.....of
provide.....with	share.....with
trust.....with	offer.....to
advise.....of	conceal.....from.

Conversation 1

C1. Somsak is very popular with his employees.

C2. Yes, he is. He's always been ever fair to them.

C1. I know he always seems to be aware of other people's problems.

C2. I think that's why he's been so successful in his work.

Conversation 2

C1. How do you like your new teacher?

C2. Very well He's always patient with us.

C1. Doesn't he ever get angry with his students?

C2. No, he never seems to get upset over anything.

Conversation 3

C1. My secretary is very efficient in everything she does.

C2. You're lucky. Secretaries aren't always careful about their work.

C1. Right. My former secretary was often neglectful of thing.

C2. Well, I advise you to be very courteous to your new one.

Conversation 4

C1. Are you optimistic about the results of the examination?

C2. To be truthful about it I'm really not.

C1. I'm not very confident of getting a good grade either.

C2. I guess it's no use be so anxious about it now.

Conversation 5

C1. My boss has been critical of my work lately.

C2. Has your recent work been consistent with your previous work.

C1. If anything, I'd say it's been superior to my previous work.

C2. Then maybe he's resentful of you for some other reason.

185. Adjective + Preposition / Conversation Drills

Intermediate

English 185

Conversation 1

C1. What did the men say about the new secretary.

C2. Apparently, she's working hard.

C1. In your opinion, is she(B) the things she must do?

C2. I would certainly say she is (A)

(A)

capable

fond of

not afraid of

desirous of

intent on

not resentful of

amenable to

(B)

skillful at

proficient in

suitable for

efficient in

careful about

adequate for

aware of

Conversation Drill 2

C1. What's your opinion of our new president?

C2. I like because he's (A) other people.

C1. He's certainly (B) everyone.

C2. Obviously, he's a fine person for the job.

(A)

always considerate

never critical

never rude to

always respectful of

never hostile to ward

always courteous to

(B)

polite to

gentle with

cooperative with

popular with

truthful with

generous with

Conversation 1

- C1. What sports are you interested in?
C2. Well, I get quite excited about football.
C1. Do you get absorbed in games on TV as my brother does?
C2. I'm afraid I do. Almost every weekend.

Conversation 2

- C1. Is something the matter?
C2. Well, I'm concerned about my job.
C1. Is it related to all the recent changes?
C2. Yes, I'm having trouble getting adjusted to my new duties.

Conversation 3

- C1. Are you accustomed to the climate here yet?
C2. Not really. I get tired of the constant rain.
C1. You certainly can't be blamed for that.
C2. I'll really be glad when the spring comes.

Conversation 4

- C1. Are you acquainted with that man over there?
C2. Yes, I'm associated with him in my work.
C1. I enjoyed talking to him very much.
C2. I'm not surprised at that. He's very charming.

Conversation 5

- C1. Did you get involved in the argument at the meeting?
C2. Yes. I didn't want to be accused of not having an opinion.
C1. I got very annoyed over several things that Harold said.
C2. To tell the truth, I was very disappointed in him.

Conversation 1

C1. Somsak seemed to become nervous when he noticed the time.

C2. He spoke nervously too. I thought.

C1. I noticed he made a quick departure afterward.

C2. Yes, He did leave rather quickly didn't he?

Conversation 2

C1. Is the director a well educated man?

C2. Yes, he has a good education.

C1. Is he a very efficient person on the job.

C2. Yes, he is always seems to do things efficiently.

Conversation 3

C1. Was the man angry.

C2. Yes, he should at us very angry.

C1. Were people calm about it or not?

C1. Most of us took it quite calmly.

Conversation 4

C1. Helen is a calm person.

C2. I've noticed she always speaks calmly.

C1. She also seems sensible about things.

C2. Yes. She always handles things sensibly, in my opinion.

Conversation 5

C1. Mr. Suksan looked anxious don't you think?

C2. Yes. He was pacing the floor anxiously when I saw him.

C1. Is he always so emotional about making speeches?

C2. Yes. He gets very involved emotional.

Conversation 2

C1. Does suksan always speak rapidly?

C2. Usually but not when he makes speeches.

C1. He's good speaker, and his pronunciation is excellent.

C2. He does pronounce words well, doesn't he?

Conversation 2

C1. Was the president completely satisfied with the results?

C2. Yes, he was he expressed complete satisfaction.

C1. Did he announce the results of our work formally?

C2. Yes, he did made a formal announcement.

Conversation 3

C1. Did you consider everything impartially?

C2. Yes, I tried to give everything very impartial consideration.

C1. You treated the matter cautiously, I see.

C2. Well. It definitely called for cautious treatment.

Conversation 4

C1. Did the chairman make a recommendation to oppose changes?

C2. Yes, and he recommended opposition to the new proposal.

C1. Was there any criticism of the proposal?

C2. Yes, some people criticized it and proposed further study.

Conversation 5

C1. The boy behaved badly and deserved punishment.

C2. After the party, their parents punished them for their bad behavior.

C1. Did they apologize for their rude remarks?

C2. Yes, they made an apology for having spoken so rudely.

Conversation 1

- C1. I tried to instruct Suksan how to get there.
C2. Did he understand your instructions?
C1. Well, I described every place along the way in detail.
C2. Then I'm sure your description made everything clear.

Conversation 2

- C1. Did you see the demonstration of that new product?
C2. Yes, but it was demonstration in a different building.
C1. Did the quick in plains confuse people?
C2. Fortunately, there seemed to be very little confusion.

Conversation 3

- C1. Somsak decided not to say anything about his good luck.
C2. I think he made a wise decision Don't you?
C1. Definitely I admire him for it too.
C2. Without question, he deserves a great deal of admiration.

Conversation 4

- C1. We just recently agreed on a course of action.
C2. What brought this agreement?
C1. We investigated and concluded it was necessary.
C2. I came to the conclusion after some investigation.

Conversation 5

- C1. My friend selected everything he needed very quickly.
C2. But his selection were quite good, I thought.
C1. How could he choose things so quickly?
C2. I don't know but his choices were all very good.

Conversation 1

C1. Didn't Alice seem anxious about taking the examination?

C2. Yes, she seemed to have a great deal of anxiety about it.

C1. But she's the most intelligent student in the class?

C2. I guess intelligence and anxiety aren't directly related.

Conversation 2

C1. Fred seems to be a very sincere and ambitious person.

C2. Yes, I admire his sincerity and ambition a great deal.

C1. I suspect some people are envious of his success.

C2. Well. I'm sure successful people get quite accustomed to envy.

Conversation 3

C1. Did Bill's humorous comments amuse everyone.

C2. Yea, they did he's very clever, isn't he?

C1. Yes, and he has a good sense of humor.

C2. I thing everyone enjoyed his cleverness and humor.

Conversation 4

C1. We are very grateful for all your generosity.

C2. You're very kind to express your gratitude.

C1. Well, you were very generous, and we wanted to thank you.

C2. And I have appreciated your kindness.

Conversation 5

C1. Did your friend give you an accurate description of the event?

C2. Yes, in fact their accuracy was very impressive.

C1. They're always very competent and reliable in things like that.

C2. Competence and reliability are important qualities in our work.

Conversation 1

C1. What did you say about the man?

C2. I said the man (A) that.

C1. Yes, and his (B) caused problems.

C2. I guess no one expected that.

(A)

invented

refused

explained

criticized

defended

improve

discussed

(B)

invention

refusal

explanation

criticism

defense

improvement

discussion

Conversation 1

C1. Is that Mr. Suksan offices?

C2. Yes, it is.

C1. Whose office is this?

C2. This office is Mr. Suksan' s.

Conversation 2

C1. Where' s there a bus stop?

C2. I' m sorry, I didn' t hear you.

C1. Is there a bus stop at the next corer?

C2. No, but there' s a bus stop two blocks from here.

Conversation 3

C1. Did the Thai students arrive here during the summer?

C2. No, they arrived here just a month ago.

C1. How long ago did the England' s student arrive?

C2. They arrived exactly two months ago.

Conversation 4

C1. Did you paint your garage on Sunday?

C2. Yes, I painted the whole garage in three hours.

C1. What color did you paint it?

C2. I finally decided to paint blue.

Conversation 5

C1. Is Chamnong' s dictionary around here any place?

C2. Yes, Chamnong' s dictionary is over there on the table.

C1. Which one is Chamnong' s the red one or the blue one?

C2. The red one is his.

♣ ♣ ♣ Pardon others often, Themselves never ♣ ♣ ♣ .

Conversation 1

C1.Should we complain to one of the clerks?

C2.We should complain about the service in this store.

C1.Whom should we complain to them?

C2.I don' t think so.

Conversation 2

C1.Have you chosen furniture for your apartment yet?

C2.No, we haven' t.

C1.Why haven' t you chosen any yet?

C2.Frankly, we just haven' t had enough time.

Conversation 3

C1.Dose Mukda have to go?

C2.Yes, she does has to go to airport.

C1.How soon does she have to go?

C2.I' m not sure just how soon.

Conversation 4

C1.Do you prefer this picture or that one?

C2.Of those two, I think I prefer the bottom one.

C1.Which one of the there two do you prefer?

C2.I really can' t decide.

Conversation 5

C1.How come you couldn' t finish it?

C2.I couldn' t finish all the work yesterday.

C1.Why don' t you get started earlier next time?

C2.Because I got Started too late.

Conversation 1

- C1. Have you found a picture for your room yet?
C2. Yes, I was lucky enough to find one yesterday.
C1. How you put it on the wall yet?
C2. No, but I'm going to put it up this afternoon.

Conversation 2

- C1. Have you heard about Patipa's bad luck?
C2. No, what happened to him?
C1. I hear he's lost his job.
C2. You can't believe everything you hear here.

Conversation 3

- C1. Someone's stole money from the company last month.
C2. Some money was stolen two months ago too.
C1. I think the person who's stealing money will be caught.
C2. Somsuk said he thought the police would catch the thief soon.

Conversation 4

- C1. Did you bring your umbrella today?
C2. No, but I brought my tan raincoat.
C1. Maybe Fred will lend me his umbrella.
C2. I like he's already lent his to someone.

Conversation 5

- C1. Have you ridden in German's new car yet?
C2. Yes, I have. I rode in it last night.
C1. Did Fred let you drive the car?
C2. Yes, I drove it around the block a couple of times.

Conversation 1

C1. Did you sell those people your house?

C2. Yes, we finally sold it to them last week.

C1. Have you given you the money yet?

C2. Yes, they gave to us just this morning.

Conversation 2

C1. Has Suksan chosen a new suit yet?

C2. Yes, he chose a very nice one on Sunday.

C1. Has he worn his new suit yet?

C2. Yes, he wore it to the meeting yesterday.

Conversation 3

C1. Did Suphanee shut the window?

C2. Yes, she shut it a short time ago.

C1. She forgot it this morning.

C2. No, she left it open on purpose.

Conversation 4

C1. Did you read the magazine?

C2. Yes, we read it this morning.

C1. Did you find the article I told you about?

C2. We found it all right, but you didn't tell us it was so long.

Conversation 5

C1. Have you gone over that reading selection yet?

C2. Yes, I went over it last weekend.

C1. Did you understand everything in the essay?

C2. I think I understand all the important parts.

Conversation 1

C1.That isn't accept, is it?

C2.No, it isn't but it looks like mine.

C1.But these are your glove, aren't they?

C2.Yes, they are.

Conversation 2

C1.There were all of people at the reception, weren't there?

C2.Yes, there were over 50 I'd quest.

C1.There wasn't enough food for everyone, was there?

C2.No, there wasn't and everyone complained.

Conversation 3

C1.It rains a lot in this part of the country, doesn't it?

C2.Yes, it does, but only in the spring.

C1.But it doesn't ever snow around here, does it?

C2.No, it never does.

Conversation 4

C1.You left the office very late, didn't?

C2.Yes, I did around eleven o'clock.

C1.Then you didn't get much sleep, did you?

C2.No, I didn't.

Conversation 5

C1.Somsak has been looking for a b, hasn't he?

C2.Yes, he has, quite diligently too.

C1.He hasn't found a suitable one yet, has he?

C2.No, he hasn't, but I'm sure he will son.

Conversation 1

C1. There haven't been any storms recently, have there?

C2. No, there haven't but it's hard to believe.

C1. I suppose we could get one anytime now, couldn't we?

C2. We certainly could this is the season.

Conversation 2

C1. Not many people in that office speak English, do they?

C2. No, they don't but all of them are taking classes now.

C1. According to the rules, all employees have to learn it now, don't?

C2. Yes, they all do, and it's a problem.

Conversation 3

C1. She's already told Somsak, she'd like to go, hasn't she?

C2. Yes, she has.

C1. I guess we should plan on it then, shouldn't we?

C2. Yes, we'd better, I think.

Conversation 4

C1. You hadn't ever seen the Ambassador before last night, had you?

C2. No, I hadn't although I did see Somsak's pictures of him in May.

C1. You could have met him at the last conference, couldn't you?

C2. Yes, I could have, but I lost my nerve at the last moment.

Conversation 5

C1. We'd better tell someone about this, hadn't we?

C2. Yes, I guess we'd better, but who?

C1. The director wouldn't be very sympathetic, would he?

C2. No, I'm afraid he wouldn't.

Conversation 1

C1. Do they know his name?

C2. I don't think so. Do you?

C1. Of course. Don't you?

C2. Sure. It's Mr. Suksan.

Conversation 2

C1. Didn't the men finish the work?

C2. I don't think they did.

C1. Do they expect us to do it?

C2. I certainly hope they don't.

Conversation 3

C1. I didn't have enough time to speak to Mr. Somsak.

C2. Why didn't you?

C1. Because I had to leave quite early.

C2. So, did I but I had enough time.

Conversation 4

C1. Not many people heard the lecture, and I didn't either.

C2. Well, didn't and so did Fred.

C1. Did Somsak and Suksan?

C2. I don't think they did.

Conversation 5

C1. Did you go to work yesterday?

C2. No, I just couldn't.

C1. Why couldn't you?

C2. I didn't feel very well at all.

Conversation 1

C1. They won't be very busy, but we will.

C2. I will too, but my brother won't.

C1. We can't possibly go, but they can.

C2. My brother can too, but I can't.

Conversation 2

C1. My friend writes his reports on Monday, but I don't.

C2. Mr. Suksan doesn't either.

C1. I don't have enough time on Monday, but my friend does.

C2. Apparently Mr. Suksan does too.

Conversation 3

C1. Most of my friends will be at the meeting, but I won't.

C2. Neither will my sister, but I will if I have time.

C1. My friends didn't attend the last meeting, but I did.

C2. My sister did too, but I didn't.

Conversation 4

C1. I haven't seen that movie yet.

C2. You really ought to.

C1. I plan to tomorrow.

C2. It's an excellent film in my opinion.

Conversation 5

C1. I don't often visit museums, but I like to whenever possible.

C2. I've never visited the Modern Museum, but I plan to tomorrow.

C1. I can go with you tomorrow if you want me too.

C2. Film. I'd be glad to have company.

200. Verb Not Repeated / Conversations

Intermediate English 200

Conversation 1

C1. My friend doesn't work very hard.

C2. Do you?

C1. Of course I do.

C2. Well, I don't I hate to work.

Conversation 2

C1. I always try to be careful.

C2. I usually do too.

C1. Do you always check your work several times?

C2. I usually do, but once in a while. I don't.

Conversation 3

C1. I finished my work on time.

C2. No one else did.

C1. That's not entirely true.

C2. You're right Somsak did too, didn't he.

Conversation 4

C1. Don't you like to dance?

C2. Of course I do.

C1. Then why don't you come to the dance?

C2. I really can't.

Conversation 5

C1. When can the manager see me?

C2. Can you come at eleven o'clock this morning.

C1. No, but I can any time after two.

C2. Then I'll put your name down for two thirty.

Conversation 1

C1.I would like to finish everything today.

C2.Will you be able to?

C1.I think so.

C2.I hope so, because it's rather urgent.

Conversation 2

C1.Didn't Vasna finish the work?

C2.I don't think so.

C1.Does he expect us to finish it?

C2.I hope not.

Conversation 3

C1.We should invite them, but we don't want to.

C2.I understand your problem.

C1.They're extremely boring don't you think?

C2.I'm afraid so.

Conversation 4

C1.Do you understand the instruction?

C2.I think I do.

C1.Does your friend Panya?

C2.No, he doesn't seem to.

Conversation 5

C1.Why should I ask for permission to leave?

C2.Everyone has to.

C1.I don't have to.

C2.Yes, you do, Everyone does.

COMMON MISTAKES IN ENGLISH

MIS USED FORMS

1. USING A WRONG PREPOSITION

Mistakes are often made by using a wrong preposition after certain words. The following list includes:

1. Absorbed (very much interested) in, not at.

Don't say: The man was absorbed at his work.

Say: The man was absorbed in his work.

2. Accuse of, not for.

Don't say: He accused the man for stealing.

Say: He accused the man of stealing.

NOTE. Also "used to" as. "The man was charged with murder."

3. Accustomed to, not with.

Don't say: I am accustomed with hot weather.

Say: I am accustomed to hot weather.

NOTE. Also "used to" as. "He is used to the heat."

4. Afraid of, not from.

Don't say: The girl is afraid from the dog.

Say: The girl is afraid of the dog.

5. Aim at, not on or against.

Don't say: He aimed on (or against) the bird.

Say: He aimed at the bird.

NOTE. The preposition at is often used to denote direction: as, "throw at," "shout at," "fire at," "shoot at." But "shoot" (without the at) means to kill: as, "He shot a bird" (he hit and killed Ir.).

6. Angry with, not against.

Don't say: The teacher was angry against him.

say: The teacher was angry against him.

203

Say: The teacher was angry with him.

NOTE 1. We get angry “with” a person. but “at “ a thing; as, “He was angry at the weather”(not:” with the weather”)

NOTE 2. Also “annoyed with”, “vexed with” “indignant with” a person, but “at” a thing.

7. Anxious (troubled) about, not for.

Don't say: They are anxious for his health.

Say: They are anxious about his health.

NOTE. But “anxious” meaning “wishing very much” takes.” “for”: as, “Parents are anxious for their children's success.”

8. Arrive at, not to

Don't say: We arrived to the village at night.

Say: We arrived at the village at night.

NOTE. “Arrive in” is used of countries and large cities: as, “Mr. Smith has arrived in London (New York, India, etc.)”

9. Ashamed of, not form.

Don't say: He is now ashamed form his conduct.

Say: He is now ashamed of his conduct.

NOTE. it is not proper to use “ashamed of” in the meaning of “shy.” Thus, I am shy of my leached.”

10. Believe in, not to.

Don't say: Christians Believe to Jesus Christ.

Say: Christians believe in Jesus Christ.

NOTE. “To believe in” means to have faith in: while “to believe” (without the in) means to regard as true: as, “I quite believe what he says.”

11. Benefit by, not form.

Don't say: She has benefited form the change.

Say: He has benefited by the change.

204

NOTE. But a person gets or derives benefit from: as, “She got (or derived) much benefit from the change.”

12. Boast of or about, not for.

Don't say: He boasted for his riches.

Say: He boasted of (or about) his riches.

13. Careful of, not for.

Don't say: He is very careful for his health.

Say: He is very careful of his health.

NOTE. Also “take care of “ as, ”He takes care of his money.”

14. Covered with, not by.

Don't say: The mountains are covered by snow.

Say: The mountains are covered with snow.

15. Cure of, not from.

Don't say: The man was cured from his illness.

Say: the man was cured of his illness.

NOTE. But the noun “cure” takes “for”; as, “There is no cure for that disease.”

16. Composed of, not from.

Don't say: Our class is composed from thirty boys.

Say: Our class is composed of thirty boys.

17. Confidence in, not to.

Don't say: I have great confidence to him.

Say: I have great confidence in him.

NOTE. Also “in confidence”: as, “Let me tell you something in con dense” (as a ecret)

18. Conform to, not with.

Don't say: We must conform with the rules.

Say: We must conform to the rules.

NOTE. But “comp” takes “with” as, “We will comply with your request.”

19. Congratulate on, not for.

Don't say: I congratulate you for your success.

Say: I congratulate you on your success.

20. Consist of, not from.

Don't say: A year consists from twelve months.

Say: A year consists from twelve months.

NOTE. Great care must be taken never to use “consist” in the passive voice.

21. Come or go by train, etc., not with the train, etc.

Don' say: He came with the train yesterday.

Say: He came by train yesterday.

NOTE. We say: “by train,” “by tram,” “by boat,” “by airplane” also “by land.” “by sea,” “by air” “by bus,” “in a bus” or” on a bus” “by motor-car” or”in a motor- car,” “by taxi” or” in a taxi” “in a cab.” “in a carriage” “on horse back,” “on a donkey,” “on a bicycle” “on foot”

22. Complain of, not for.

Don't say: Many people complain for the heat.

Say: Many people complain of the heat.

23. Depend on or upon, not from.

Don't say: It depends from himself.

Say: It depends on (or upon) himself.

NOTE. Also “rely on” or “upon “ as, ”I cannot rely on (or upon him) him.”

24. Deprive of, not from.

Don't say: He was deprived from his freedom.

Say: He was deprived of his freedom.

25. Die of an illness, not from an illness.

Don't say: Many people have died from malaria.

Say: Many people have died of malaria.

206

NOTE. Men “die of illness,” “of hunger,” “of thirst,” “of” or “from wounds” “from overwork” “by violence,” “by the sword,” “by pestilence” “in battle,” “in poverty” “for their country,” “for a cause” “through neglect” “on the scaffold “at the stake,”

26. Different from, not than.

Don't say: My book is different than yours

Say: My book is different from yours.

27. Disappointed in. not from.

Don't say : I was disappointed from his work.

Say : I was disappointed in his work.

NOTE. We are disappointed in a thing when we see that it is not what we expected or desired. but we are disappointed of a thing when we fail to get it: as, “We were disappointed of our hopes.”

28. Divide into parts, not in parts.

Don't say : I divided the cake in four parts.

Say : I divided the cake into four parts.

NOTE. But a thing be divided “into half” or “in two”; as, “he divided the apple in half (or in two).”

29. Doubt (n.) of or about, not for.

Don't say : I have no doubt for his ability.

Say : I have no doubt of (or about) his ability.

NOTE. Also “doubtful of” : as. “I am doubtful of his ability to pass.”

30. Dressed in, not with.

Don't say : The woman was dressed with black.

Say : The woman was dressed in black.

NOTE. “The woman was in black.” is also correct.

31. Exception to, not of.

Don't say : This is an exception of the rule.

207

Say : This is an exception to the rule.

NOTE. But we say “with the exception of.” as, “He liked all his studies with the exception of Latin.”

32. Exchange for, not by.

Don't say : They exchanged wheat by machinery.

Say : They exchanged wheat for machinery

33. Fail in, not from.

Don't say : He failed from mathematics last year.

Say : He failed in mathematics last year.

34. Glad of or about, not from or with.

Don't say : I am glad from (of with) the news.

Say : I am glad of (or about) the news.

NOTE. But a person is “glad at” a result: as, “He is glad at having received a good mark.”

35. Good at, not in.

Don't say : My brother is good in mathematics.

Say: My brother is good at mathematics.

NOTE 1. Also “bad at,” “clever at,” “quick at,” “slow at,” etc. But “weak in”; as, “He is weak in grammar.”

NOTE 2. “He is good in class” means that his conduct is good.

36. Full of, not with or from.

Don't say : The jar was full with (or from) oil.

Say : The jar was full of oil.

NOTE. But “fill” takes “with” as, “He filled the glass with water.”

37. Get rid of, not from.

Don't say : I shall be glad to get rid from him.

Say : I shall be glad to get rid of him.

208

38. Guard against, not from.

Don't say: You must guard from bad habits.

Say: You must guard against bad habits.

39. Guilty of, not for.

Don't say: He was found guilty for murder.

Say: He was found guilty of murder.

40. Independent of, not from.

Don't say: He is independent from his parents.

Say: He is independent of his parents.

NOTE. But we say "dependent on" : as, "A child is dependent on its parents."

41. Indifferent to, not for.

Don't say: They are indifferent for politics.

Say: They are indifferent to politics.

42. Insist on, not to.

Don't say: He always insisted to his opinion.

Say: He always insisted on his opinion.

NOTE. But "persist" takes "in": as, "He persisted in his foolish ideas."

43. Interested in, not for.

Don't say: She is not interested for her work.

Say: She is not interested in her work.

NOTE. Also "take an interest in": as, "She takes a great interest in music."

44. Jealous of, not from.

Don't say: He is very jealous from his brother.

Say: He is very jealous of his brother.

45. Leave for a place, not to a place.

Don't say: They are leaving to England soon.

Say: They are leaving for England soon.

Don't say: He lives from his brother's money.

Say: He lives on his brother's money.

NOTE. Also "feed on": as, "Some birds feed on insects."

47.Look at, not to.

Don't say: Look to this beautiful picture.

Say: Look at this beautiful picture.

NOTE. Also "gaze at," "stare at," etc. But: "look after" (= take care of); "look for" (= try to find); "look over" (= examine); "look into" (= examine closely); "look upon" (= consider); "look down upon" (= have a low opinion of); "look up to" (= respect); "look out for" (= expect); "look forward to" (expect with pleasure); "look to" (=be careful of or rely on).

48.Married to, not with.

Don't say: She was married with a rich man.

Say: she was married to a rich man.

NOTE. Also "engaged to"; as, "Miss Jones was engaged to Mr. Smith."

49.Opposite to, not from.

Don't say: Their house is opposite from ours.

Say: Their house is opposite to ours.

50.Pass by a place, not from a place.

Don't say: Will you pass from the post-office?

Say: Will you pass by the post-office?

51.Play for a team, not with a team.

Don't say: He plays regularly with that team.

Say: He plays regularly for that team.

52.Pleased with, not from.

Don't say: The teacher is pleased from me.

Say: The teacher is pleased with me

NOTE. But we may say “pleased at” or “pleased with” if an abstract noun or a clause follows; as, “They were pleased at (or with) what he said”; “They were pleased at (or with) his gentleness.”

53. Popular with, not among.

Don't say: John is popular among his friends.

Say: John is popular with his friends.

54. prefer to, not from.

Don't say: I prefer a blue pen from a red one.

Say: I prefer a blue pen to a red one.

NOTE. Also “preferable to”; as, ‘Work is preferable to idleness.’

55. Preside at or over, not in.

Don't say: Who presided in the last meeting?

Say: Who presided at (or over) the last meeting?

56. Proud or, not for.

Don't say: He is very proud for his promotion.

Say: He is very proud of his promotion.

NOTE. But we say “take (a) pride in”; as, “A craftsman takes a pride in his work.

57. Rejoice at or in, not for.

Don't say: We rejoiced for his success.

Say: We rejoiced at (or in) he success.

58. Related to, not with

Don't say: Are you related with him in any way?

Say: Are you related to him in any way?

NOTE. Also “relation to”; as, “Is he any relation to you?”

59. Repent of, not from.

Don't say: He repent from his wrongdoing.

Say: He repent of his wrongdoing.

211

NOTE. But ‘repentance’ takes “for”; as, “He feels repentance for his sin.”

60. Satisfied with, not from.

Don’t say: Are you satisfied from you marks?

Say: Are you satisfied with you marks?

NOTE. Also “content with;” “delighted with;” “displeased with;” “dissatisfied with;” “disgusted with.”

61. Similar to, not with.

Don’t say: Your book is not similar with mine.

Say: Your book is not similar to mine.

62. Sit at a desk, etc., not on a desk, etc.

Don’t say: The teacher often sits on his desk.

Say: The teacher often sits at his desk.

NOTE. Also “sit at a table.” But: “on a chair,” “on a bench,” “on a sofa,” etc: “In an arm-chair,” “In a tree” or “ up a tree.” “A bird sometimes perhaps (sits) on a tree.”

63. Spend on, not for.

Don’t say: I spend a lot of time for my stamps.

Say: I spend a lot of time on my stamps.

64. Succeed in, not at.

Don’t say: I hope he will succeed at his work.

Say: I hope he will succeed in his work.

NOTE. But a person succeeds to a property, a title, or an office: as, “Queen Elizabeth II succeeded to the throne in 1952.”

65. Superior to, not from or than.

Don’t say: This is superior from (or than) that.

Say: This is superior to that.

NOTE. Also “inferior to,” “junior to,” “senior to,” “prior to.”

Don't say: I am quite sure for his honesty.

Say: I am quite sure of his honesty.

NOTE. Also "certain of"; a., "I am quite certain of it."

67. Surprised at, not for.

Don't say: We were surprised for his failure.

Say: We were surprised at his failure.

NOTE. Also "astonished at," "amazed at," "alarmed at," "puzzled at," "shocked at."

68.Suspect of, not for.

Don't say: I suspect him for stealing the pen.

Say: I suspect him of stealing the pen.

NOTE. Also "suspicious of"; as, "Dogs are suspicious of strangers."

69.Take by, not from.

Don't say: He took his brother from the hand.

Say: He took his brother by the hand.

NOTE. Also 'hold by,' "catch by," "seize by," "snatch by," "grasp by."

70.Tired of, not from.

Don't say: The boys are tired from boiled eggs.

Say: The boys are tired of boiled eggs.

NOTE. "Tired with" means with no energy or strength left; as, "I am tired with walking: I want to rest." So also "weary of" and "weary with."

71.Translate into, not to.

Don't say: Translate this passage to English.

Say: Translate this passage into English.

72.Tremble with cold, etc., not from cold, etc.

Don't say: The man was trembling from cold.

Say: The man was trembling with cold.

NOTE. Also “shake with” and “shiver with”; as, “The thief was shaking with fear.” 213

73. Warn (a person) of danger, not about danger.

Don't say: They were warned a bout the danger.

Say: They were warned of the danger.

NOTE. But we warn a person against a fault; as, “His teacher warned him against disobeying the regulations.”

74. Write in ink, not with ink.

Don't say: I have written the letter with ink.

Say: I have written the latter in ink.

NOTE. To “write in ink,” “In pencil,” or “In chalk” means the marks that a pen, a pencil, or a piece of chalk makes. If, how ever, the instrument is meant by which the writing is done, we use ‘with” instead of “In”; as, “I write with (a pen, a pencil, or a piece of chalk).

75. Tie to, not on.

Don't say: The man tied the horse on a tree.

Say: The man tied the horse to a tree.

NOTE. Also “bind to”; as, ‘The prisoner was bound to the stake.’”

2. MISUSE OF THE INFINITIVE

The gerund and not the infinitive should be used:

(a) After prepositions or preposition phrases:

76. Without, etc. + -ing.

Don't say: Do your work without to speak.

Say: Do your work without speaking.

77. Instead of, etc. + -ing.

Don't say: He went away instead to wait.

Say: He went away instead of waiting.

78. Capable of + -ing.

Don't say: He is quite capable to do that.

214

Say: He is quite capable of doing that.

NOTE. Also "incapable of" but "able" or "unable" is followed by the infinitive; as, "He is unable to do anything."

79. Fond of + -ing.

Don't say: She is always fond to talk.

Say: She is always fond of talking.

80. Insist on + -ing.

Don't say: He insisted to go to London.

Say: He insisted on going to London.

81. Object to + -ing.

Don't say: I object to be treated like this.

Say: I object to being treated like this.

82. Prevent from + -ing.

Don't say: The rain prevented me to go.

Say: The rain prevented me from going.

83. Succeed in + -ing.

Don't say: He succeeded to gain the prize.

Say: He succeeded to gaining the prize.

84. Think of + -ing.

Don't say: I often think to go to England.

Say: I often think of going to England.

85. Tired of + -ing.

Don't say: The customer grew tired to wait.

Say: The customer grew tired of waiting.

86. Used to + -ing.

Don't say: She is used to get up early.

Say: She is used to getting up early.

87. Avoid + -ing.

Don't say: You can't avoid to make mistakes.

Say: You can't avoid making mistakes.

NOTE. Also "can't help" (= can't avoid); as, "I can't help laughing.

88. Enjoy + -ing.

Don't say: I enjoy to play a game of football.

Say: I enjoy playing a game of football.

NOTE. Verbs meaning "to like" or "to dislike" may be followed either by the infinitive or the gerund; as, "He likes reading English books," or "He likes to read English books."

89. Excuse + -ing.

Don't say: Please excuse me to be so late.

Say: Please excuse my being so late.

Or: Please excuse me for being so late.

90. Finish + -ing.

Don't say: Have you not finished to speak?

Say: Have you not finished speaking?

NOTE. Verbs meaning "to begin" are followed either by the gerund or the infinitive; as, "She began to speak," or "She began speaking."

91. Go on (continue) + -ing.

Don't say: The music went on to play all day.

Say: The music went on playing all day.

NOTE. Also "keep on"; as, "She kept on playing the piano."

92. Mind (object to) + -ing.

Don't say: Would you mind to open the door?

Say: Would you mind opening the door?

93. Practice + -ing.

Don't say: You must practice to speak English.

216

Say: You must practice speaking English.

94. Remember + -ing.

Don't say: I do not remember to have seen him.

Say: I do not remember seeing him.

Or: I do not remember having seen him.

95. Risk + -ing.

Don't say: We couldn't risk to leave him alone.

Say: We couldn't risk leaving him alone.

96. Stop + -ing.

Don't say: The wind has almost stopped to blow.

Say: The wind has almost stopped blowing.

NOTE. Also "give up" (= stop); as, "He gave up smoking."

(d) After certain adjectives:

97. Busy + -ing.

Don't say: He was busy to prepare his lessons.

Say: He was busy preparing his lessons.

98. Worth + -ing.

Don't say: Is today's film worth to see?

Say: Is today's film worth seeing?

(e) After certain phrases:

99. Have difficulty in + -ing.

Don't say: He has no difficulty to do it.

Say: He has no difficulty in doing it.

100. Have the pleasure of + -ing.

Don't say: I had the pleasure to meet him.

Say: I had the pleasure of meeting him.

NOTE. Also "take pleasure in"; as, "He takes great pleasure in helping the poor."

Don't say: It's no use to cry like a baby.

Say: It's no use crying like a baby.

102.It's no good + -ing.

Don't say: It's no good to get angry at once.

Say: It's no good getting angry at once.

103.Look forward to + -ing.

Don't say: I look forward to see him soon.

Say: I look forward to seeing him soon.

104.There is no harm in + -ing.

Don't say: There's no harm to visit him now.

Say: There's no harm to visiting him now.

3. THE USE OF A WRONG TENSE

105. Using the past tense after 'did' instead of the infinitive without "to."

(a) To ask questions:

Don't say: Did you went to school yesterday?

Say: Did you go to school yesterday?

(b) To make negations:

Don't say: I did not went to school yesterday.

Say: I did not go to school yesterday.

After the auxiliary 'did' the present infinitive without "to" must be used, and not the past tense of the indicative.

NOTE. The answer to a question beginning with 'Did' is always in the past tense; as, "Did you see the picture?"-"Yes, I saw the picture"; or "Yes, I did."

106. Using the third person singular after "does" instead of the infinitive without "to."

(a) To ask questions:

Don't say: Does the gardener waters the flowers?

(b) To make negation:

Don't say: The man does not waters the flowers.

Say: The man does not water the flowers.

After the auxiliary "does" the present infinitive without "to" must be used, and not the third person of the present indicative.

NOTE. The answer to a question beginning with "Does" is always in the present tense, third person; as, "Does he like the cinema?"-"Yes, he likes the cinema"; or "Yes, he does."

107.Using the third person singular after "can," "must," etc., instead of the infinitive without "to."

Don't say: He can speaks English very well.

Say: He can speak English very well.

After the verbs "can," "must," "may," "shall," and "will," the present infinitive without "to" must be used, and not the third person of the present indicative.

108.Wrong sequence of reuses.

Don't say: He asked me what I am doing.

Say: He asked me what I was doing.

When the verb in the principal clause is in the past tense, only a past tense can be used in subordinate clauses.

NOTE. But this rule does not apply (1) verbs within quotations. (2) to facts that are true at all times. and (3) to comparisons. Thus we say:

1. He said. 'I am waiting for your answer.'

2. He said that London is a great city.

3. He liked you more than he like me.

109.Using 'shall' or 'will' instead of "should" or "would" in a subordinate clause.

Don't say: He said that he will come tomorrow.

Say: He said that he would come tomorrow.

“shall” and “will” change to “should” and “would” in subordinate clauses, when the verb in the principal clause is in a past tense.

110. Using “may” instead of “might” in a subordinate clause.

Don't say: He told me that he may come today.

say: He told me that he might come today.

“May” changes to “might” in subordinate clauses, when the verb in the principal clause is in the past tense.

NOTE. The conjunction “that” is never preceded by a comma.

111. Using “can” instead of “could” in a subordinate clause.

Don't say: He thought he can win the prize.

Say: He thought he could win the prize.

“Can” changes to “could” in subordinate clauses, when the verb in the principal clause is in the past tense.

112. Using the past tense after the sign of the infinitive “to.”

Don't say: He tried to kicked the ball away.

Say: He tried to kick the ball away.

The past tense of the indicative mood cannot be used after the infinitive sign “to.”

113. Using the past tense after an auxiliary verb, instead of the past participle.

Don't say: I have forgot to bring my book.

Say: I have forgotten to bring my book.

The past participle (and not the past tense) should be used with the auxiliary verb “have” and its parts.

114. Using “must” or “ought” to express a past obligation.

Don't say: You ought to come yesterday.

say: You ought to have come yesterday.

say: You should have come yesterday.; or

“Must” and “ought” cannot be used as past tenses. To express a past duty (which was not done) we may use the perfect infinitive after “ought,” or

“should,” or such expressions as ‘had to,’ ‘was obliged to.’”

NOTE. But in indirect speech “must” and “ought” may be used as past tenses; as, “He said he must do it.”

115. Using the present perfect instead of the past tense.

Don't say: I have seen a good film yesterday.

Say: I saw a good film yesterday.

The past tense (and not the present perfect) should be used for an action completed in the past at a stated time.

NOTE. When your sentence has a word or a phrase denoting past time, like “yesterday,” “last night,” “last week,” “last year,” “then,” “ago,” etc., be sure always to use a past tense.

116. Using the past tense instead of the present perfect.

Don't say: I saw the Parthenon of Athens.

Say: I have seen the Parthenon of Athens.

If we are speaking of the result of a past action rather than of the action itself, we must use the present perfect tense. When somebody says, “I have seen the Parthenon” he is not thinking so much of the past act of seeing it, as of the present result of that past action.

117. Using the past tense with a recent action, instead of the present perfect.

Don't say: The clock struck.

Say: The clock has struck.

If we are speaking of an action just finished, we must use the present perfect instead of the past tense. For instance, immediately after the clock strikes, we should not say “The clock struck,” but “The clock has struck.”

118. Using the simple present instead of the present perfect.

Don't say: I am in this school two years.

221

Say: I have been in this school two years.

The present perfect (and not the simple present) must be used for an action begun in the past and continuing into the present. "I have been in this school two years" means I am still here.

119. Using the simple present instead of the present perfect in the Andrew to a "since" clause of time.

Don't say: Since he came, we are happy.

Say: Since he came, we have been happy.

The verb in the answer to a "since" clause of time is generally in the present perfect tense.

120. Using the simple present instead of the present continuous.

Don't say: Look! Two boy fight.

Say: Look! Two boys are fighting.

The present continuous (and not the simple present) must be used for an action going on at the time of speaking.

NOTE. The present continuous is also used for actions in the near future, especially with verbs of motion such as "come," "go," "leave," etc.; as, "He is leaving for England soon."

121. The continuous form of the tense misused.

Don't say: I am understanding the lesson now.

Say: I understand the lesson now.

As a rule, verbs denoting a state rather than an act have no continuous forms, like "understand," "know," "believe," "like," "love," "belong," "prefer," "consist," "mean," "hear," "see," etc.

122. using the present continuous for a habitual action, instead of the simple present.

Don't say: Every morning I am going for a walk.

Say: Every morning I go for a walk.

The simple present (and not the present continuous) should be used to express a present habitual action.

NOTE. But the present continuous may express a habitual action when used with the word “always” or with a verb denoting a continuous state; as,

“He is always talking in class”; “He is living in London.”

123. Using the verb “to use” for a present habitual action.

Don’t say: I use to rise at six every morning.

Say: I rise at six every morning.

Or: I am accustomed to rising at six. etc.

The verb “to use” does not express a habit in the present. “I use” means “I employ”; as, “I use a fountain-pen to write with.”

NOTE. But in the past tense the verb “to use” expresses a past habitual action, and it usually refers to some remote habit or one no longer followed; as, “I used to see him every day”; “My father used to play football very well.”

124. Using the past continuous for a habitual action, instead of the simple past tense.

Don’t say: Last year I was walking to school everyday.

Say: Last year I walked to school everyday.

A habit in the past is expressed by the simple past tense, and not by the past continuous.

NOTE. The past continuous tense is used to describe events in the past continuing at the time another action took place; as, “I was walking to school when I met him.”

125. Using the past tense instead of the past perfect.

Don’t say: The train left before I arrived.

Say: The train had left before I arrived.

The past perfect should be used when the time of one past action is more past

than that of another. The action which was completed first is put in the past perfect and the second action in the past tense.

NOTE. The present tense and the past perfect should never be used in the same sentence. Thus, it would be incorrect to say, "My brother says that he had not gone to the cinema last night."

126. Using the past perfect instead of the past tense.

Don't say: I had finished the book yesterday.

Say: I finished the book yesterday.

The past perfect should not be used unless there is another verb in the past tense in the same sentence.

127. Using the future in a clause of time, instead of the present tense.

Don't say: I shall see you when I shall come back.

Say: I shall see you when I come back.

If the verb in the principal clause is in the future, the verb in the time clause must be in the present tense.

128. Using the future in the "If" clause instead of the present tense.

Don't say: If he will ask me, I shall stay.

Say: If he asks me, I shall stay.

In a simple future condition, the present tense is used in the condition (or "If" clause) and the future tense in the answer to the condition.

NOTE. But the future tense may be used in an "If" clause expressing a request; as, "I shall be very grateful if you will lend me some money."

129. Using the present tense after "as if" or "as though" instead of the past.

Don't say: He talks as if he knows everything.

Say: He talks as if he knew everything.

The phrase "as if" or "as though" should be followed by the past tense. "He talks as if he knew everything" means "He talks as he would talk if he knew everything."

NOTE. With the verb “to be” the subjunctive “were” is often used after “as if”; as, “He acts as if he were a rich man.”

130. Using the past conditional of “wish” instead of the present indicative.

Don't say: I would wish to know more English.

Say: I wish (that) I knew more English.

To express a present meaning the present tense of “wish” is used, followed by a “that” clause containing a past tense.

131. Using a wrong tense with an “improbable” condition.

Don't say: If he would ask me, I should stay.

Say: If he asked me, I should stay.

An “improbable” condition is expressed by the past tense and answered by the conditional. This use of the past tense does not indicate a time but a degree of probability.

132. Using a wrong tense with an “impossible” condition.

Don't say: If he would have asked me, I should stay.

Say: If he had asked me, I should have stayed.

An “impossible” condition is expressed by the past perfect and answered by the past conditional. This use of the past perfect does not indicate a time but an impossible happening.

133. Using the infinitive instead of a finite verb.

Don't say: Sir, to go home to bring my book?

Say: Sir, may I go home to bring my book?

The infinitive simple names an action without reference to person, number or time. Therefore, it cannot make sense without the help of a finite verb.

134. Mixing up the tenses.

Don't say: They asked him to be captain, but he refuses.

Say: They asked him to be captain, but he refused.

If you begin with a verb referring to past time, keep the same form all through. 225

The same rule applies to tenses throughout a composition.

4. MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES

135. Confusion of gender.

Don't say: The door is open: please shut her.

Say: The door is open: please shut it.

In English only names of persons and animals have gender (masculine or feminine). Things without life are neuter, and take the pronoun "It" in the singular.

NOTE. But when things without life are personified, they take masculine or feminine pronouns: as, "Thim has his work to do"; England is proud of her navy.

136. Using the possessive form for thing without life.

Don't say: His room's window is open.

Say: The window of his is open.

The possessive form is used for persons and animals only. For things without life, when cannot possess, the objective with "of" should be used.

NOTE. But we say: "a day's work," "a night's rest," "a week's holiday," "a shilling's worth," "the sun's rays," "the court's decision," "a boat's crew," "London's population." etc.

137. Using the objective case after the verb "to be."

Don't say: It was him.

Say: It was he.

The pronoun coming after the verb "to be" must be in the nominative case, and not in the objective.

NOTE. The common expression "It's me" is strictly an error, yet it is the accepted form in conversation. "It is I" remains the correct form in written composition

138. Using the objective case after the conjunction "than."

Don't say: My brother is taller than me.

Say: My brother is taller than I (am).

226

The word “than” is a conjunction, and can only be followed by a pronoun in the nominative case. The verb coming after the pronoun is generally omitted.

NOTE. In spoken English the objective case is often used; as, “You’re much taller than me.”

139.Using the nominative case after “between.”

Don’t say: It is a secret between you and I.

Say: It is a secret between you and me.

“Between” is a preposition, and all prepositions take the objective case after them.

140.Using the objective case before a gerund.

Don’t say: There is no use in me learning it.

Say: There is no use in my learning it.

When a word ending in “-ing” is used as a gerund, any noun or pronoun coming before it must be in the possessive case.

141.using the objective case with the double possessive.

Don’t say: A friend of him told us the news.

Say: A friend of his told us the news.

The double possessive (of + mine, yours, his, etc.) is often used when we wish to emphasize the person who possesses rather than the thing which he possesses. “A friend of his” is simply another way of saying “one of his friends.”

142.Misuse of “-self” forms.

Don’t say: George and Myself are present.

Say: George and I are present.

The simple, personal pronouns I, you, he, etc., should be used, if no emphasis is necessary.

NOTE. The “-self” pronouns are used in two ways: (1) for emphasis; as, 227

“She herself was hurt”; (2) reflexively; as, “She hurt herself.”

143.using “himself” or “themselves” instead of “himself” or “themselves.”

Don’t say: They fell down and hurt themselves.

Say: They fell down and hurt themselves.

The reflexive pronouns, third person, are “himself” and “themselves.” and not “himself” and “themselves.”

144.The cognate object misused.

Don’t say: Michael played a very good play.

Say: Michael played a very good game.

In English the use of a cognate object-an object having the same form and meaning as the verb-is not common, but is restricted to only a few expressions; as, 1“to sing a fine song,” “to fight a good fight,” “to dream a strange dream,” “to live a long life,” “to die a sad death.”

145. Using the relative pronoun “which” for persons.

Don’t say: I have a brother which is at school.

Say: I have a brother who is at school.

‘Which,’ as a relative pronoun, is to be used only for animals or things. The right pronoun to use for persons is “who (whose, whom).”

146.Using “which” or “what” after “all” etc.

Don’t say: I know all which (or what) he said.

Say: I know all (that) he said.

The relative pronouns “which” and “what” cannot be used after “all” “some” “any” “something” “everything” “anything” “much” “little” and “nothing”. Only the relative “that” may be used after these words, but it is commonly omitted.

147.Who and whom.

(a) Who.

Don’t say: I saw the man whom you said was

Say: I saw the man who you said was away.

228

(b) Whom.

Don't say: He is a man who I know you can trust.

Say: He is a man whom I know you can trust.

In sentence (a) 'who' is the subject of "was"; "you said" is a mere parenthesis.

In sentence (b) 'whom' is the object of "you can trust"; "I know" is a mere parenthesis.

148. Using "who" "whom" or "which" after the superlative, instead of "that."

Don't say: It is the best which I have seen.

Say: It is the best (that) I have seen.

The relative 'that' (not 'who,' "whom," or "which") should be used after a superlative. It can, however, be omitted.

149. Using a wrong relative after "same" or "such."

Don't say: He wears the same coat that I wear.

Say: He wears the same coat as I wear.

After "same" and "such" the relative "as" should be used.

NOTE. But "that" (not "who" or "which") can sometimes be used after "same"; as, 'He wore the same clothes that he wore on Sunday.'

150. Using "who?" or "what?" instead of "which?"

Don't say: Who of the two boys is the taller?

Say: Which of the two boys is the taller?

The interrogative pronoun "Which?" is used for both persons and things, and asks for one out of a definite number.

NOTE. The interrogative pronoun "what?" does not imply choice; ad, "What is your telephone number?" It is also used to ask for a person's profession; ad, "What is your father?"- "He is a lawyer."

Say: English is not easy to learn.

The adjectives "easy," "difficult," "hard," "heavy," "good," etc., are generally followed by the active infinitive.

Don't say: She was disappeared from the house.

Say: She disappeared from the house.

As a rule, intransitive verbs, like appear, seem, become, consist, cannot be used in the passive voice.

164.Mixing up one form of the verb with another.

Don't say: It is better to do some work well while young than spending all the time in play.

Say: It is better to do some work well while young than to spend all the time in play.

Care should be taken that one form of the verb is not mixed with another; if the first verb in a comparison is in the infinitive mood, the second must also be in the infinitive.

165.Wrong sequence of moods.

Don't say: If you would do me this favor, I shall be very grateful to you.

Say: If you would do me this favor, I should be very grateful to you.

Or: If you will do me this favor, I shall be very grateful to you.

In a conditional sentence either both verbs must be in the subjunctive mood or both in the indicative.

166.The unrelated participle.

Don't say: Being in haste, the door was left open.

Say: Being in haste, he left the door open.

Care must be taken to provide the logical subject relating to the pre-nuptial phrase. In the sentence given, the logical subject to "being in haste" is, of course, "he" and not "the door."

167.The question phrase "isn't it?" misused.

Don't say: He played well yesterday, isn't it?

The question phrase "isn't it" is used only when the preceding statement contains the word "Is"; as, "It is a hot day, isn't it?"

NOTE. In this form of question, the same tense and person must be used as in the preceding statement and the correct auxiliary must be used. If, however, the preceding statement is in the negative form, the question phrase omits "not."

168. Misuse of the gerund to express purpose.

Don't say: I come here for learning English.

Say: I come here to learn English.

Purpose is commonly expressed by the infinitive, and not by the gerund.

169. "Yes" or "No" in answer to negative questions.

Question: Did you not see the game?

Answer: Yes,--that is, I saw it.

No,--that is, I did not see it.

In answering negative questions, say "Yes" if the answer is an affirmation, and "No"

if it is a negation: that is, answer without any regard to the negative form of the question.

170. Using a double negative.

Don't say: He says he is not afraid of nobody.

Say: He says he is not afraid of anybody.

Or: He says he is afraid of nobody.

In English, two negatives are equal to an affirmative statement. You should therefore avoid using two negative words in the same clause: when "not" is used, "not" changes to "any," "nothing" to "anything," "nobody" to "anybody," "no one" to "anyone," "nowhere" to "anywhere," "neither....nor" to "either....or."

171. Using "one time" or "two times" instead of "once" or "twice."

Don't say: I was absent one time or two times.

Say: I was absent once or twice.

“Once” and “twice” should be used instead of “one time” and “two time.” 231

But “thrice” for “three times” is now seldom used.

172.Using “a day,” etc., instead of “one day,” etc.

Don’t say: A day a fox was very hungry.

Say: One day a fox was very hungry.

“One” (not “a” or “an”) should be used with day, night, morning, afternoon and evening, when the “one” means “a certain.”

173.Using “the other day” instead of “the next day,” etc.

Don’t say: He slept well and was better the other day.

Say: He slept well and was better the next day (or on the following day).

NOTE. “The other day” is an idiom meaning a few days ago; as, “I met an old friend the other day.”

174. Using “one as a half,” etc., instead of “half past one,” etc.

Don’t say: Lessons begin at seven and a half.

Say: Lessons begin at half past seven.

In telling time, we say “half past one,” “half past two,” “half past three,” etc.

175.Using “as usually” instead of “as usual.”

Don’t say: As usually, he left his pen at home.

Say: As usual, he left his pen at home.

The English phrase “as usual” is a shortened form of “as is usual.” “As usually” is not an English phrase at all.

176.Using “according to my opinion” instead of “In my opinion.”

Don’t say: According to my opinion, he is right.

Say: In my opinion, he is right.

NOTE. Avoid also the use of the phrase “as I think” instead of “I think.” Say: “He is lazy and I think he will fail (not: as I think).”

177.Using “at the end” instead of “In the end.”

Don’t say: At the end they reached the city.

“In the end” means finally or at last; “at the end” means at the farthest point or part; as, “There is a holiday at the end of this book,”; “There is a holiday at the end of this month.”

178.Using “under the rain” instead of “in the rain.”

Don’t say: They played football under the rain.

Say: They played football in the rain.

NOTE. Also “In the sun” and “In the shade”; as, ‘He was sitting in the sun (or in the shade).’

179.Using “the reason is because” instead of “the reason is that.”

Don’t say: The reason is because I believe it.

Say: The reason is that I believe it.

The word “reason” denotes cause, therefore “the reason is because” is a useless repetition. The correct idiom is “the reason is that. . . .”

180.Using “a country” instead of “the country.”

Don’t say: I spend my holidays in a country.

Say: I depend my holidays in the country.

“A country” is a place like France, India, or Egypt; “the country” is a part of a country consisting of fields, forests, and mountains.

181.Using “If” instead of “whether.”

Don’t say: I asked him if he was going.

Say: I asked him whether he was going.

Where “or not” is implied, “whether” must be used, not “if.” Unlike “whether,” “if” does not expect a Yes or No reply; as, “I shall speak to him if he comes.”

182.Using “any” for two, instead of “either.”

Don’t say: Any of these two books is good.

Say: Either of these two books is good.

“Either” means one or the other of two; “any” means one of three or more;

183.Using "likes me" instead of "I like."

Don't say: The cinema likes me very much.

Say: I like the cinema very much.

NOTE. But "The cinema appeals to me" is correct, and means that I like the cinema very much.

184.Using "neither...or" instead of "neither...nor."

Don't say: He speaks neither English or French.

Say: He speaks neither English nor French.

REMEMBER that "neither" must be followed by "nor" and not by "or." But "either" is followed by "or"; as, "He speaks either English or French."

185.Using "both" in a negative sentence instead of "neither."

Don't say: Both of them did not go to school.

Say: Neither of them did not go to school.

REMEMBER that "both" is changed into "neither" in a negative sentence.

186.Using "also" or "too" in a negative sentence instead of "either."

Don't say: John has not come also (or too).

Say: John has not come either.

REMEMBER that "also" or "too" is changed into "either" in a negative sentence.

187.Using "and" in a negative sentence instead of "or."

Don't say: He did not speak loudly and clearly.

Say: He did not speak loudly or clearly.

If a negative word is used in a sentence, the conjunction "or" must be used instead of "and."

NOTE. But if clauses having different subjects are joined, the conjunction "and" is used; as, "He did not write, and I did not feel at rest." (Note carefully the use of a comma in front of "and.")

Don't say: I had reached the school till the rain started.

Say: I had reached the school before the rain started.

Or: I had reached the school where the rain started.

A clause of time is introduced by “before” or “when” instead of “till” if the verb of the main clause denotes an action completed before that of the time clause.

5. UN-ENGLISH EXPRESSIONS

Mistakes often result from too close a translation into English of foreign idiomatic expressions. The following are examples of such mistakes:

189.Take an examination, not give an examination.

Don't say: The pupil gave his examination.

Say: The pupil took his examination.

NOTE. The teacher “gives” or “sets” the examination; the student “takes” the examination or “sits for” the examination.

190.To be right or wrong, not to have right or wrong.

Don't say: You have right or you have wrong.

Say: You are right or you are wrong.

191.To be busy, not to have work.

Don't say: I have much work this morning.

Say: I am very busy this morning.

NOTE. But we can say, “I have a lot of work to do this morning.”

192.It is cold, etc., not is has cold, etc.

Don't say: It has much hot in the summer.

Say: It is very hot in the summer.

193.Take a walk, not make a walk.

Don't say: We made a walk along the river.

Say: We took a walk along the river.

NOTE. We can also say: “We had a walk” or “We went for a walk along 235

the river.”

194. Go for a ride on a bicycle, etc., not go for a walk on a bicycle, etc.

Don't say: We went for a walk on our bicycles.

Say: We went for a ride on our bicycles.

NOTE. We “ride” on a bicycle, on horseback, etc., but we “ride” in a bus, train, or other public vehicle.

195. Mount or get on a horse, etc., not ride a horse, etc.

Don't say: He rode his bicycle and went home.

Say: He got on his bicycle and rode home.

NOTE. “To ride” denotes a continuous action; “to mount” or “to get on” denotes a simple action.

196. Dismount or get off a horse, etc., not come down from a horse, etc.

Don't say: They came down from their bicycles.

Say: They got off their bicycles.

NOTE. We “alight from” or “get out of” a carriage or a motorcar. But we “get on” or “off” the tram, the bus, etc.

197. Go on foot, not go with the feet.

Don't say: Shall we go there with the feet?

Say: Shall we go there on foot?

198. Take or have a bath, not make a bath.

Don't say: I make a shower-bath every morning.

Say: I take a shower-bath every morning.

Or: I have a shower-bath every morning.

NOTE. But when speaking of the sea or, the river, we say: “to bathe,” “to have a bath,” “to go for a bath,” “to go bathing”; “to go for a swim” or “to go swimming.”

199. Ask a question, not make a question.

Don't say: He made me several questions.

Say: He asked me several questions.

236

200. Take an hour, not need an hour, etc.

Don't say: I shall need an hour to do that.

Say: It will take me an hour to do that.

201. Allow or give a discount, not make a discount.

Don't say: He made me a small discount.

Say: He allowed me a small discount.

Or: He gave me a small discount.

202. Do drill, not make drill.

Don't say: We make drill twice a week.

Say: We do drill twice a week.

203. Take exercise, not make exercise.

Don't say: You ought to make more exercise.

Say: You ought to take more exercise.

204. Give or deliver a lecture, not make a lecture.

Don't say: He made an interesting lecture.

Say: He gave an interesting lecture.

Or: He delivered an interesting lecture.

NOTE. But we say, "He made an interesting speech."

205. Say one's prayers, not make or do one's prayer.

Don't say: I make my prayer before I go to bed.

Say: I say my prayers before I go to bed.

NOTE. "To say grace" is to ask God's blessing before beginning a meal.

206. Pretend, not make oneself that.

Don't say: He makes himself that he knows.

Say: He pretends to know.

207. Have a dream, not see a dream.

Don't say: I saw a strange dream last night.

Say: I had a strange dream last night.

237

Or: I dreamt a strange dream last night.

208. Smoke a cigarette, etc., not drink a cigarette, etc.

Don't say: He drinks too many cigarettes.

Say: He smokes too many cigarettes.

209. Make a mistake, not do a mistake.

Don't say: This man always says the truth.

Say: This man always tells the truth.

Or: This man always speaks the truth.

NOTE. Also "to tell a lie" (not "to say a lie"); as, "He told me a lie."

211. See or watch a game, not follow a game.

Don't say: Did you follow the game?

Say: Did you see (or watch) the game?

NOTE. Also avoid saying "to follow the lesson" when mean "to attend the class."

212. Turn (switch) the light on or off, not open or shut the light.

Don't say: Please open (or shut) the light.

Say: Please turn on (or off) the light.

Or: Please switch on (or off) the light.

NOTE. But we "light," "blow out" or "put out" a lamp, a candle, or a fire.

213. Give an example, not bring an example.

Don't say: Can you bring a better example?

Say: Can you give a better example?

214. Give a mark, not put a mark.

Don't say: The teacher put me a good mark.

Say: The teacher gave me a good mark.

NOTE. Also avoid: "to put a lesson," "to put a goal," "to put punishment," "Say instead: 'to give a lesson,' 'to score a goal,' 'to give punishment.'"

215. Set a watch by, not put a watch with.

238

Don't say: I put my watch with the church bell.

Say: I set my watch by the church bell.

216. A watch is slow or fast, not goes behind or in front.

Don't say: My watch goes two minutes behind.

Say: My watch is two minutes slow.

NOTE. We can also say, "My watch loses or gains."

217. Show a film, not play a film.

Don't say: This film will be played shortly.

Say: This film will be shown shortly.

218. Have one's hair cut, not cut one's hair.

Don't say: I am going to cut my hair.

Say: I am going to have my hair cut.

NOTE. Also avoid: "I shall make a pair of shoes (or a suit of clothes) "Say instead: "I shall have a pair of shoes (or a suit of clothes) made."

219. Learn by heart, not learn from out.

Don't say: We have a poem to learn from out.

Say: We have a poem to learn by heart.

220. Put on weight, not put weight.

Don't say: I have put at least three lilies.

Say: I have put on at least three lilies.

NOTE. The opposite of "put on weight" is "to lose weight"; as, "She has lost five kilos."

221. It works miracles, not it makes miracles.

Don't say: That medicine makes miracles.

Say: That medicine works miracles.

222. Getting on with, not going with.

Don't say: How is he going with his work?

223. This morning, etc., not today morning, etc.

Don't say: I have not seen him today morning.

Say: I have not seen him this morning.

NOTE. Avoid: "today morning," "today afternoon," "today evening," "yesterday night," "this night," Say: "this morning," "this afternoon," "this evening," "last night," "tonight."

224. Quietly, not slowly, slowly.

Don't say: The coy came in slowly, slowly.

Say: The boy came in quietly.

225. What is the matter? not What have you?

Don't say: What have you today?

Say: What is the matter with you today?

NOTE. "What's wrong (with you)?" and "What's the trouble (with you)?" are also correct.

226. What do you call . . . ? not How do you call . . . ?

Don't say: How do you call this in English?

Say: What do you call this in English?

NOTE. But if the question is not about a thing, but about some expression, we should say, "How do you say this in English?"

INCORRECT OMISSIONS

1. OMISSION OF PREPOSITIONS

The following are example of mistakes made throughout the omission of the preposition after certain words:

227. Ask for a thing, not ask a thing.

Don't say: He came and asked my book.

Say: He came and asked for my book.

228.Dispose of a thing, not dispose a thing.

240

Don't say: He will dispose all his property.

Say: He will dispose of all his property.

229.Dream of a thing, not dream a thing.

Don't say: Young men dream glory and riches.

Say: Young men dream of glory and riches.

230.Explain to a person, not explain a person.

Don't say: She explained me the matter.

Say: She explained the matter to me.

231.Knock at the door, not knock the door.

Don't say: Who is knocking the door?

Say: Who is knocking at the door?

232. Listen to a person or thing, not listen a person or thing.

Don't say: They were listening the music.

Say: They were listening to the music.

233.Pay for a thing, not pay a thing.

Don't say: How much did you pay the book?

Say: How much did you pay for the book?

NOTE. A person can pay another person: he can also pay a bill, an account, or a subscription, but he pays for a thing that he buys.

234.Point to or at a person or thing, not point a person or thing.

Don't say: He pointed the map on the wall.

Say: He pointed to the map on the wall.

Or: He pointed at the map on the wall.

NOTE. Also 'point out'; as, "He pointed out the boy who did it." "To point" (without any preposition) means "to direct"; as, "Do not point the gut this way."

235.Remind a person of something, not remind a person something.

Don't say: Please remind me that later.

Say: Please remind me of that later.

241

236. Reply to a person, not reply a person.

Don't say: He has not replied me yet.

Say: He has not replied to me yet.

237. Say to a person, not say a person.

Don't say: He said me, "Come tomorrow."

Say: He said to me, "Come tomorrow."

238. Dearth for a lost thing, not search a lost thing.

Don't say: They are searching the ball.

Say: They are searching for the ball.

NOTE. But "In search of"; as, "The wolf goes in search of sheep." "To search" (without the "for") means to look in one's pockets or house; as, "The policeman searched the man and his house."

239. Share with a person, not share a person.

Don't say: My friend shared me his book.

Say: My friend shared his book with me.

240. Speak to a person, not speak a person.

Don't say: I shall speak him about that.

Say: I shall speak to him about that.

NOTE. "I shall speak to him" means "I shall do all the speaking" "I shall speak with him" means "I shall have a conversation with him."

241. Supply a person with something, not supply a person something.

Don't say: Can you supply me all I need?

Say: Can you supply me with all I need?

NOTE. Also "provide a person with"; as "He provided his son with with all he needed."

242. Think of a person or thing, not think a person or thing.

Don't say: Think a number and then double it.

Say: Think of a number and then double it.

242

243. Wait for a person or thing, not wait a person or thing.

Don't say: I shall wait you at the cinema.

Say: I shall wait for you at the cinema.

NOTE. But "a wait" takes no preposition; as, "I am awaiting your reply".

244. Wish for a thing, not wish a thing.

Don't say: He does not wish any reward.

say: He does not wish for any reward.

245. Write to a person, not write a person.

Don't say: I shall write him tomorrow.

say: I shall write to him tomorrow.

NOTE. But when the direct object of "write" is expressed, the preposition is omitted; as, "I shall write him a letter."

2. MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

246. The "-s" or "-es" of third person singular omitted.

Don't say: He speak English very well.

say: He speaks English very well.

Great care must be taken not to leave out the "-s" or "-es" from the present tense, when the subject is "he," "she," "It," or a noun in the singular number.

247. Using "don't" instead of "doesn't".

Don't say: He don't care what he says.

say: He doesn't care what he says.

"Don't (= "do not") is used with "I," "we," "you," "they," and with words that are in the plural number: while "doesn't" (= "does not") is used with "he," "she," "It," and with words that are in the singular number.

248. The "-d" or "-Ed" of the past tense omitted.

Don't say: I receive a letter yesterday.

say: I received a letter yesterday.

243

Take care not to leave out the “-d” or “Ed” from the past tense of regular verbs.

In speaking, the ending of the past tense should be pronounced clearly.

249. The “-s” or “-Es” of the plural form omitted.

Don't say: I paid six shilling for the book.

say: I paid six shillings for the book.

Car must be take not to leave out the “-s” or “Es” of the plural number.

NOTE. The following nouns have irregular plurals; “man, men”; “woman, women”; “child, children”; “ox, oxen”; “foot, feet”; “tooth, teeth”; “goose, geese”; “mouse, mice.”

250. The possessive ending omitted.

Don't say: A boy's hat is different from a girl.

say: A boy's hat is different from a girl's.

If the first noun in a comparison is in the possessive case, the second must also be in the possessive.

251. Omission of the article before a common noun in the singular.

Don't say: I have no money to buy motor-car.

say: I have no money to buy a motor-car.

As a rule, either “the” or “a” or “an” should be used before a common noun in the singular number.

252. Omission of “a” or “an” after the verb “to be.”

Don't say: I am not teacher, I am student.

say: I am not a teacher, I am a student.

The indefinite article “a” or “an” must be used to express a singular noun-complement of the verb ‘to be.’

253. Omission of “a” or “an” after the word “half.”

Don't say: He drank half glass of milk.

say: He drank half a glass of milk.

NOTE. “Half a glass” (“an hour,” “a day,” “a mile,” etc.) is the shortened form of “half of a glass” (“of an hour,” “of a day,” “of a mile,” etc.).

254. Omission of “a” or “one” before “hundred,” etc.

Don’t say: Hundred years make a century.

say: A hundred years make a century.

Or: One hundred years make a century.

The indefinite article “a” or the numeral “one” must be used before “hundred” and “thousand.” See also 543.

255. Omission of “a” or “an” from “make a noise,” etc.

Don’t say: I told them not to make noise.

say: I told them not to make a noise.

NOTE. Also “to make a mistake,” “to make a fortune,” “to make a will,” “to make an impression,” “to make an experiment,” “to make an attempt.”

256. Omission of “the” before names of nationalities.

Don’t say: English are fond of sports.

say: The English are fond of sports.

The definite article must be placed before the names of nationalities, describing a people collectively; as, ‘the British,’ “the French,” “the Dutch,” “the Swiss,” “the Chinese,” “the Sudanese,” etc.

257. Omission of “the” before names of musical instruments.

Don’t say: I play violin, but not piano.

say: I play the violin, but not the piano.

The definite article should be used before the names of musical instruments.

258. Omission of “the” before the word “cinema,” etc.

Don’t say: On Saturday I go to cinema.

say: On Saturday I go to the cinema.

The definite article is required before the words “cinema,” “theater,”

259. Omission of ‘the’ before the name of ships.

Don’t say: Nelson is a British warship.

say: The Nelson is a British warship.

The definite article should be inserted before the names of ships; as, “the Queen Elizabeth,” “the Mohammed Ali,” “the Crete.”

260. Omission of the verb “to be” from the passive.

Don’t say: Charles Dickens born in 1812.

say: Charles Dickens was born in 1812.

The passive voice is always formed by the use of the verb “to be,” combined with the past participle of the verb required (“to be” + past participle).

261. Omission of the auxiliary “do” from questions.

You understand the problem?

Don’t say: He understands the problem?

He understood the problem?

Do you understand the problem?

say: Does he understand the problem?

Did he understand the problem?

The auxiliary verb “do” (“does,” “did”) is placed before another verb to ask questions in the present and past tenses.

NOTE. But the auxiliary “do” should not be used with verbs which are themselves auxiliaries, like “can,” “may,” “must”; as, “Can you mean me tomorrow?”

262. Omission of “do” when it is a principal verb.

Don’t say: Do pupils their work carefully?

say: Do pupils do their work carefully?

In the correct form of the sentence, the first “do” has no meaning of its own and only helps to make the question; whereas the second “do” is the principal verb of the sentence, and has the meaning of “perform.”

Don't say: I was born the third of December.

say: I was born on the third of December.

As a rule, a noun should not be used without a preposition to who the time of some action.

NOTE. But no preposition is used with "last year," "next year," "some day," "one day," "any day," "that day," "this afternoon," etc.

264.Omission of "there" as an introductory word.

Don't say: They have no houses to live.

say: They have no houses to live in.

If the infinitive is of an intransitive verb (like "live," etc.), it must have a preposition after it. The object of the preposition is omitted.

265.Omission of "there" as an introductory word.

Don't say: Once lived a great king.

say: Once there lived a great king.

The adverb "there" should be used to introduce the subject of a sentence in which the verb stands before the subject.

266.Omission of "how" after the verb "to know."

Don't say: She knows to play the piano.

say: She knows how to play the piano.

After the verb "to know" the infinitive is always introduced by the adverb "how."

267.Omission of "should" after the word "lest."

Don't say: He ran lest he miss the train.

say: He ran lest he should miss the train.

"Lest" (= in order thatnot) is generally followed by the work "should".

268.Omission of "other" after a comparative.

Don't say: Homer was greater than all the Greek poets.

Since Homer was a Greek poet, the first sentence makes him greater than himself, which is illogical.

269. The object of the transitive verb omitted.

Don't say: I asked him for some paper, but he had not.

say: I asked him for some paper, but he had none.

As a rule, every transitive verb must have an expressed object; here, "none" (equivalent to "not any") is the object of "had."

270. Omission of the direct object when there are two objects.

Don't say: I asked him for some ink, and he gave me.

say: I asked him for some ink, and he gave me some.

Some transitive verbs, like "give," "bring," "send," "tell," "buy," "show," must have two expressed objects, direct and indirect; here, "some" is the direct object of "gave."

271. The object of the verb "enjoy" omitted.

Don't say: I enjoyed during the holidays.

say: I enjoyed myself during the holidays.

Or: I enjoyed my holidays.

The verb "enjoy" cannot be followed by a preposition. It must always have an object, which may be either a reflexive pronoun or a noun.

NOTE. We also say: "I had a good time" (= I enjoyed myself); but not "I enjoyed my time."

272. Omission of the noun after an adjective.

Don't say: The unfortunate was shot dead.

say: The unfortunate man was shot dead.

The noun coming after an adjective cannot be understood; it must be expressed.

NOTE. The noun is omitted after an adjective only when the adjective is used as a noun in the plural; ad, "The poor envy the rich."

Don't say : I had never seen such a thing.

Say : I had never seen such a thing before.

The word “before” should not be left out in making a comparison between one thing and all others of the same kind.

274. Omission of “else” after “everybody” , etc.

Don't say : He is stronger than anybody.

Say : He is stronger than anybody else.

In making a comparison between one person or thing and all others of the same kind, the word “else” must be used after “everybody” “anybody,” “anything,” etc.

275. The demonstrative pronoun “one” omitted.

Don't say : This is the only that I like.

Say : This is the only one that I like.

The demonstrative pronoun “one” (plural “ones”) is used in place of a noun mentioned before.

276. Omission of the personal pronoun before the infinitive.

Don't say : I want to tell me the truth.

Say : I want you to tell me the truth.

With verbs like “want,” “like,” “wish,” etc., the subject of the infinitive is expressed if it is different from that of the main verb.

277. Omission of “it” as subject of an impersonal verb.

Don't say : Is very hot in the Sudan.

Say : It is very hot in the Sudan.

The pronoun “it” as the subject of an impersonal verb should be expressed.

278. Omission of the pronoun subject from the principal clause.

Don't say : When he saw the teacher, stood up.

Say : When he saw the teacher, he stood up

In a sentence beginning with an adverbial clause , the personal pronoun

subject from the principal clause must be expressed.

249

279. Omission of the personal pronoun after a quotation.

Don't say : "I am learning English," said.

Say : "I am learning English," he said.

After a quotation, the personal pronoun as the subject of the reporting verb must be expressed.

280. Omission of the word "and" between numbers.

Don't say : Eight thousand thirty-seven.

Say : Eight thousand and thirty-seven

The conjunction "and" must be used to connect "hundred," "thousand," "million" to a number of tens or units.

281. Omission of the word "or" between numbers.

Don't say : I have only two, three friends.

Say : I have only two or three friends

We must always insert the conjunction "or" between numbers used thus : "two" or "three men," "five or six pages," "eight or ten days."

282. Omission of the word "old" from age.

Don't say : My sister is fifteen years.

Say : My sister is fifteen years old.

NOTE. We may also say, "My sister is fifteen years of age," or simply. "My sister is fifteen.

283. "For this" used instead of "for this reason."

Don't say : For this he wants to leave.

Say : For this reason he wants to leave.

The phrase "for this" is incorrect, Say "for this reason" or "for that reason", also "owing to that" or "because of that."

284. "To these" used instead of "to these words."

Don't say : To these, he replied

Say : To these words, he replied

250

The phrase “to there” is incorrect. Say. Two there words” or “to this”

285. “Better” used instead of “had better.”

Don’t say : Better go home at once.

Say : You had better go home at once.

The correct phrase is “Had better.” “You had better go” means “It would be a good thing for you to go.”

286. -UP” and “down” used instead of “upstairs” and “downstairs.”

Don’t say : He is up ; he is down.

Say : He is upstairs ; he is downstairs.

- He is up” means he is out of bed. “He is upstairs (downstairs)” means he is on the upper (lower) floor of the building.

287. “Throw it” used instead of “throw it away.”

Don’t say : It is dirty ; throw it.

Say : It is dirty ; throw it away.

“Throw it” means to threw a thing to someone, such as a ball.

“Throw it away” means to get rid of it by throwing it aside.

288. “I don’t think” used instead of “I don’t think so.”

Don’t say : I don’t think.

Say : I don’t think so.

- I DOS’s think” means I do not use my brains ; while “I don’t think so” means I am not of that portion.

289. “Before yesterday,” etc., used instead of “the day before yesterday,” etc.

Don’t say : He arrived before yesterday.

Say : He arrived the day before yesterday.

The phrases “before yesterday.” “after tomorrow,” “after next week” are incorrect. Say instead, “the day before yesterday.” “the day after tomorrow,” “the week after next.”

290. "Thank you" used instead of "No, thank you."

Don't say : Thank you (if you want to refuse an offer).

Say : No, thank you.

NOTE "Thank you" is used to accept an offer, and generally means "Yes, please."

NECESSARY WORDS

1. UNNECESSARY PREPOSITIONS

The words below do not require a preposition to go with them because they have within them the meaning of the preposition.

291. Answer (= reply to).

Don't say : Please answer to my question.

Say : Please answer my question.

NOTE. But the noun "answer" takes "to" : as His answer to my question was wrong."

292. Approach (= come near to).

Don't say : Do not approach to that house.

Say : Do not approach that house.

293. Ask (= put a question to).

Don't say : I asked to the teacher about it.

Say : I asked the teacher about it.

294. Attack (= go and fight against).

Don't say : They attacked against the enemy.

Say : They attacked the enemy.

NOTE. But they, "to make an attack on" : as, "They made an attack on the enemy.

295. Comprise (= consist of).

Don't say : The book comprises of five chapters.

Say : The book comprises five chapters.

296. Enter (= go into).

Don't say : We entered into the classroom.

Say : We entered the classroom.

NOTE. But we enter "into" a conversation, a debate, or a discussion.

297. Finish (= come to the end of).

Don't say : I have finished from my work.

Say : I have finished my work.

298. Leave (= depart from),

Don't say : He left from England last week.

Say : He left England last week .

299. Obey (= act according to).

Don't say : We should obey to our teachers.

Say : We should obey our teachers.

300. Permit (= give permission to).

Don't say : He permitted to him to stay here.

Say : He permitted him to stay here.

NOTE. "Allow" is similar in meaning and use to "permit": as.

"He allowed him to stay here."

301. Reach (= arrive at)

Don't say : We reached at the school early.

Say : We reached the school early.

302. Reassemble (= be similar to).

Don't say : Does he resemble to his father?

Say : Does he resemble his father?

NOTE. But “resemblance” takes “to” or “between” : as, “He has no resemblance to his father” ; “There is no resemblance between them.”

303. Teil (= say to).

Don't say : I told to him to come at once.

Say : I told him to come at once.

304. Behind (= at the back of).

Don't say : He hid behind of a large tree.

Say : He hid behind a large tree.

305. Inside (= on the inner side of).

Don't say : The boys went inside of the room.

Say : The boys went inside the room.

306. Outside (= out of).

Don't say : They stood outside of the door.

Say : They stood outside the door.

307. Round (= on all sides of).

Don't say : The earth goes round of the sun.

Say : The earth goes round the sun.

NOTE. “Around” is similar in meaning and use to “round.”

2. UNNECESSARY ARTICLES

308. Wrong use of “the” with proper nouns.

Don't say : The George will go to the England.

Say : George will go to England.

As a rule, the definite article is not used with proper nouns.

NOTE. But “the” is generally placed before the names of (1) rivers, (2) seas, (3) oceans, (4) bays, (5) gulfs, (6) mountain ranges, (7) groups of islands, and

(8) countries or provinces consisting of an adjective and a noun. Thus we say : “the Nile,” “the Mediterranean,” “the Atlantic.” “the Bay of Biscay,” “the Persian Gulf.” “the Alps.” “the Dodcanese.” “the United States,” “the Central Provinces (of India).”

309. Wrong use of “the” with proper nouns in the possessive.

Don't say : The Euripides' tragedies are famous.

Say : Euripides' tragedies are famous.

The definite article must not be used with proper nouns in the possessive case.

NOTE. With foreign name the extra syllable marking the possessive is often awkward to pronounce : the apostrophe only is then used, as in “Euripides' tragedies.”

310. Wrong use of “the” with abstract nouns.

Don't say : The bravery is a great virtue.

Say : Bravery is a great virtue.

Abstract nouns, if used in a general sense, cannot take the article.

NOTE. But if abstract nouns are used in a particular sense they require the use of the article : as, “The bravery of the Spartans was renowned.”

311. Wrong use of “the” with material nouns.

Don't say : The gold is a precious metal.

Say : Gold is a precious metal.

Material nouns, if used in a general sense, are used without any article.

NOTE. If, however, material nouns are used in a particular sense, the definite article is required : as, “The gold of South Africa is exported to many countries.”

312. Wrong use of “the” with plural nouns used in a general sense.

Don't say : The dogs are faithful animals.

Say : Dogs are faithful animals.

The definite article is omitted before common nouns in the plural if used in a general sense.

313. Wrong use of “the” with names of languages.

Don't say : He speaks the English very well.

Say : He speaks English very well.

The definite article is never used before the names of languages.

NOTE. But we can say, "He speaks the English language very well."

314. Wrong use of "the" with names of meals.

Don't say : We shall start after the breakfast.

Say : We shall start after breakfast.

The definite article should not be used before the names of the meals-
"breakfast,," "lunch,," "dinner,," or "supper."

315. Wrong use of "the" with name of games.

Don't say : My Favorite game is the football.

Say : My Favorite game is football.

No article is used before the name of games like "football,," "hockey,,"
"cricket,," "volley-ball,," "basket-ball."

316. Wrong use of "the" with name of disease.

Don't say : The cholera is a dreadful disease.

Say : Cholera is a dreadful disease.

As a rule, the definite article is needed with common name of illnesses : as,
"I' was suffering from a cold (a fever, a cough , a headache)."

317. Wrong use of "the" with name of colors.

Don't say : The green is a beautiful color.

Say : Green is a beautiful color.

The definite article should not be used before the names of colors when as
nouns.

318. Wrong use of "the" with the name of the senses.

Don't say : The smell is one of the five senses.

Say : Smell is one of the five senses.

No article is used before the name of the five senses : “sight,” “smell,” “hearing,” “taste,” and “touch.”

319. Wrong use of “the” with names of days and months.

Don’t say : The Sunday is a day of prayer.

The December is the last month.

Say : Sunday is a day of prayer.

December is the last month.

The definite article should not be used before the names of days and months.

NOTE . But we say “the Sunday before last.” “the December of 1940.” etc.

320. Wrong use of “the” with “man” denoting the human race.

Don’t say : The man is born a sinner.

Say : man is born a sinner.

“Man” denoting the human race’ is used without the definite article. So also “mankind” requires no article : as, “Disease is the enemy of mankind.”

321. Wrong use of “the” with “school”

Don’t say : My brother goes to the school.

Say : My brother goes to school.

“To go to school” means to be a student : while “to go to the school” means to visit the school.

NOTE. Similarly , “to leave school” means to stop being a student : and “to leave the school” means to go away from the school premises.

322. Wrong use of “the” with “church.”

Don’t say : On Sunday I go to the church.

Say : On Sunday I go to church.

“To go to “church” means to go and pray : while “to go to the church” means to go and visit the church.

NOTE. Similarly, distinguish between “go to bed” and “go to the bed,” “go to prison” and “go to the prison,” “go to market” and “go to the market.” “go to sea” and “go to the sea,” “go to hospital” and “go to the hospital,” “sit at table” and “sit at the table.”

323. Wrong use of “the” with “nature.”

Don't say : The nature is beautiful in spring.

Say : Nature is beautiful in spring.

NOTE. But the definite article is required if “nature” is used in other meanings : as, “It is in the nature of a dog to be faithful.

324. Wrong use of “the” with “society.”

Don't say : A thief is a danger to the society.

Say : A thief is a danger to society.

NOTE . But the definite article is required if “society” is used (1) in a particular sense : as. “The society of the Greeks was based on freedom : (2) in the sense of companionship : as “I enjoy the society of my friends.”

325. Wrong use of “the” in the phrase “In future” (= from now on)

Don't say : You must be careful in the future.

Say : You must be careful in future.

NOTE. “In The future” means in the time to come : as “Nobody knows what will happen in the future.”

326. Wrong use of “the” after “whose.”

Don't say : The boy whose the feather is ill has left.

Say : The boy whose feather is ill has left.

The article must not be used after the relative : “whose” because the relative take the place of the article.

327. Wrong use of the indefinite article after “kind of” or “sort of.”

Don't say : What kind of a book do you want?

Say : What kind of book do you want?

258

The phrase “kind of” or “sort of” should not be followed by the indefinite article “a” or “an.”

328. Wrong use of the indefinite article before “work,” etc.

Don't say : He now found a work at the bank.

Say : He now found work at the bank.

The indefinite article should not be used before such words as “work,” “fur,” “health,” “permission.”

3. THE INFINITIVE WITHOUT “TO”

Mistakes are frequently made by using the in finite sign “to” after the following verbs, which do not require it.

329. Can + infinitive without “to.”

Don't say : My brother can to swim very well.

Say : My brother can swim very well.

NOTE. The negative form “cannot” is always written as one word.

330. Could + infinitive without “to.”

Don't say : I could not to see you yesterday.

Say : I could not see you yesterday

331. May + infinitive without “to.”

Don't say : May I to trouble you for a moment?

Say : May I trouble you for a moment?

332. Might + infinitive without “to.”

Don't say : He might to come in the morning.

Say : He might come in the morning.

333. Must + infinitive without “to.”

Don't say : I must to see him at his office.

Say : I must see him at his office.

Don't say : His father would not let him to go.

Say : His father would not let him go.

335.Make (or force) + infinitive without “to.”

Don't say : You can't make him to understand.

Say : You can't make him understand.

336.See + infinitive without “to.”

Don't say : They saw him to leave the house.

Say : They saw him leave the house.

NOTE. “They saw him leaving the house” is also correct.

337.Watch + infinitive without “to.”

Don't say : I watched the boys to play hockey.

Say : I watched the boys play hockey.

NOTE. “I watched the boys playing hockey” is also correct.

338.Hear + infinitive without “to.”

Don't say : We heard him to speak in English.

Say : We heard him speak in English.

NOTE. “ We heard him speaking in English.” is also correct.

339.Feel + infinitive without “to.”

Don't say : I could feel his heart to beat.

Say : I could feel his heart beat.

Or : I could feel his heart beating.

NOTE. If the verbs “make,” “see,” “watch,” “hear,” “feel,” are used in the passive, the sign “to” must be used : as , “He was seen to leave the house” “He was heard to speak in English.

4. MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES

340. Wrong repetition of subject.

Don't say : My little brother he is at school.

Never repeat the subject by using a pronoun after the noun “My little brother” and “he” denote the same person : there fore, one or the other may be used as subject, but not both.

341. Wrong repetition of subject. in a compound sentence.

Don't say : I Went to market and I bought fruit.

Say : I Went to market and bought fruit.

In a compound sentence. the same subject is expressed once only and is not repeated before cache, unless the sentence is long and complicated.

342. Wrong repetition of subject after an adjectival clause.

Don't say : George, who is a careless pupil, he lost his book.

Say : George, who is a careless pupil, lost his book.

If the subordinate clause is an enlargement of the subject. the personal pronoun should not be used before the verb of the principal clause.

343. Wrong repetition of subject after a participial phrase.

Don't say : The man having finished his work he received his pay.

Say : The man having finished his work received his pay.

When a participial phrase is used after a noun subject. the finite verb must not be preceded by a personal pronoun.

344. Wrong use of personal pronoun in a relative clause.

Don't say : The book which I lost it was new.

Say : The book which I lost was new.

A personal pronoun as well as a relative cannot be used in the relative clause if they both refer to the same antecedent. In the first be used, but not both in the same sentence.

345. Wrong repetition of object.

Don't say : The doctor I know him very well.

Say : I know the doctor very well.

In the sentence given ,the words “doctor” and “him” denote one and the same object : therefore, either “doctor” or “him” may be used, but not both in the same sentence.

346. Wrong repetition of object with infinitive.

Don't say : I bought an English book to read it.

Say : I bought an English book to read .

An object cannot be repeat with infinitive of purpose if the verb takes an object.

347. Wrong use of “that” in direct speech.

Don't say : He said that, “I am sure to pass.”

Say : He said, “I am sure to pass.”

We cannot use “that” in direct speech that is, when we repeat without any change the words that some other person has spoken.

NOTE. But in indirect speech we say: He said that he was sure to pass.”

348. Using a double comparative.

Don't say : He is more stronger than George.

Say : He is stronger than George.

Double comparatives are incorrect : “more stronger” ought to be only “stronger.” However, we can say “much stronger.”

349. Misuse of adjectives that cannot be compared.

Don't say : My work is more perfect than his.

Say : My work is superior to his.

Or : My work is better than his.

Certain adjectives cannot be compared : perfect . unique, preferable, supreme, right, etc.

350. “Return back” used instead of “return.”

Don't say : She has returned back to school.

Say : She has returned to school.

The word “back” cannot be used with “return,” since “return” means to come back.

351. “Have got” used instead of “have.”

Don't say : He has got blue eyes and red hair.

Say : He has blue eyes and red hair.

“Got” means to acquire : “has got” should therefore not be used unless the intended meaning is has acquired as, “He has got his reward at last.”

NOTE. In conversation, however, it is more idiomatic to say.

“He has got blue eyes and red hair.”

352. “Begin from” used instead of “begin.”

Don't say : Examinations begin from Thursday.

Say : Examinations begin on Thursday.

A thing can begin only at a point of time. The word cannot be used to apply to the whole time during which a thing is being done.

353. “Consider as” used instead of “consider.”

Don't say : He considers me as his best friend.

Say : He considers me his best friend.

The word “consider” cannot be followed by “as” But we say.

“He regards me as his best friend.”

354. “For to” used instead of “to”

Don't say : I came here for to learn English.

Say : I came here to learn English.

The preposition “for” should never be put before the sign “to” of the infinitive.

355. “From where” used instead of “where.”

Don't say : From where can I buy a good watch ?

Say : Where can I buy a good watch ?

“Where” means at what place : while “from” denotes the point of origin : as

“From where do tourists come?.

356. “And etc.” used instead of “etc.”

Don't say : I, you, we, and etc. are pronouns.

Say : I, you, we, etc. are pronouns.

“Etc.” is the short form of “et cetera,” a Latin phrase meaning and other things.

The combination “and etc.” is wrong because it would mean and other things.

NOTE. However, students are advised to avoid using “etc.” in a composition and to use instead of it phrases such as “and other things,” “and the rest,” “and so on.”

357. “So so that” used instead of “so ... that.”

Don't say : I am so tired so that I cannot go”

Say : I am so tired that I cannot go”

When “so” or “such” is completed by a clause of result, the clause is introduced by “that” and not by “so that”

358. “From now and on” used instead of “from now on.”

Don't say : From now and on I will study bard.

Say : From now on I will study bard.

The phrase “from now and on” is incorrect. Say, “from now as.”

359. “Though... yet” used instead of “though.”

Don't say : Though it is raining , yet he will go.

Say : Though it is raining , he will go.

“Though” (“although”) is the conjunction introducing the subordinate clause, and a second one (“yet” or “still”) is not required.

360. “Go to home” used instead of “ go home.”

Don't say : When school is over I go to home.

Say : When school is over I go home.

The expression “I go to home” is wrong. Say, “I go home.”

361.Using “for” with a phrase of definite distance.

Don’t say : He lives two miles far from here.

Say : He lives two miles from here.

When a phrase of definite distance (like “two miles”) is used in a sentence, the word “far: cannot be used also. But we can say, “He lives two miles away.

CONFUSED WORDS

1. PREPOSITIONS OFTEN CONFUSED

362.To and At.

(a) To.

Don’t say : We come at school every morning.

Say : We come to school every morning

(b) At.

Don’t say : Someone is standing to the door.

Say : Someone is standing at the door.

“To” is used to express motion from one place to another ;. while “at” is used to denote position or rest.

363.To and Till.

(a) To

Don’t say : We walked till the river and back.

Say : We walked to the river and back.

(b) Till.

Don’t say : I shall stay here to next month.

Say : I shall stay here till next month.

“To” is used with distance, and “till” (“until”) with time.

364.At and In”

(a) To

Don't say : I spent my holidays in kyrenia.

265

Say : I spent my holidays at kyrenia.

(b) In.

Don't say : He lives at London or at New York.

Say : He lives in London or in New York.

“In” is generally used before the names of countries and large cities, or before the name of the place in which one is at the time of speaking “At” is used before the names of small towns and villages, or in speaking of a distant place.

365.In and Into.

(a) In.

Don't say : He spent all the day into his room.

Say : He spent all the day in his room.

(b) Into.

Don't say : He came in the room and sat down.

Say : He came into the room and sat down.

“In” denotes position or rest inside something : while “into” denotes motion or direction towards the inside of something

NOTE. The preposition “into” is always written as aware.

366.On, At, In. (Time.)

(a) On”

Don't say : My uncle will arrive at Saturday.

Say : My uncle will arrive at Saturday.

(b) At

Don't say : I usually get up on five o'clock.

Say : I usually get up at five o'clock.

(c) In

Don't say : He takes a walk at the afternoon.

Say : He takes a walk in the afternoon.

(1) “On” is used with the day of the week or month : as , “ on Friday, “ “on March 25,” “on New Year’s Day,” (2) “At” is used with the exact time : as “at fore o’clock,” “at dawn,” “at noon” “at sunset,” “at midnight” (3) “In” is used with a period of time: as. “in April,” “is winter,” “In 1945,” “In the morning.” But “at night” and “by day”

367. For and At. (Price)

(a) For

Don’t say : I bought a book at ten shillings.

Say : I bought a book for ten shillings.

(b) At.

Don’t say : I cannot buy it for such a price.

Say : I cannot buy it at such a price.

“For” is used if the actual sum is mentioned : “at” is used if the actual sum is not given.

NOTE. Rut if the weight or measure follows the price, “at” may be used with the actual sum : as, “The cloth was sold at fifty shillings a yard.”

368. Between and Among.

(a) Between.

Don’t say : There was a fight among two boys.

Say : There was a fight between two boys.

(b) Among.

Don’t say : Divide the apple between you three.

Say : Divide the apple among you three.

Between is used for two only while “among” is used for more than two.

369. Beside and Besides.

(a) Beside

Don't say: He was standing just besides me.

267

Say: He was standing just beside me.

(b) Besides.

Don't say: We study French beside English.

Say: We study French besides English.

“Beside” means “by the side of” and “ besides “ means “ in addition to”.

370.Except for Besides.

Don't say: I have other books except these.

Say: I have other books besides these. (= in addition to)

NOTE. “Except” means leaving out as “Everyone was present except John.

371.By for With.

Don't say: The man shot the bird by a gun.

Say: The man shot the bird with a gun.

When we wish to show the means or the instrument with which the action is done, we use “with” “By” denotes the doer of the action as The bird was shot by the man.

NOTE. But the following take “by” not “with” “by (electric) light” etc., “by steam. “by hand.” “by post” “by telephone” “by one’s watch”“by the day” “by the dozen” “by the yard”

372.From for By.

Don't say: Mary was punished from her father.

Say: Mary was punished by her father.

“By” (not “from”) should be used after the passive voice to show the doer of the action.

373.From for Of or In

Don't say: He is the tallest from all the boys.

Say: He is the tallest of all the boys.

Or: He is the tallest boy in the class.

and followed by “of” or “in”.

374. for for About.

Don't say: The teacher spoke for bad habits.

Say: The teacher spoke about bad habits.

“For” cannot be used in the sense of “about” The chief use of for is to convey the idea of being in favour of Therefore. If we say that the teacher “spoke for bad habits” it is like saying that he spoke in favour of bad habits

375. Since for For

Don't say: He has lived here since two years.

Say: He has lived here for two years.

The preposition “for” is placed before words or phrases denoting a period of time: as “for three days,” “for six weeks,” “for two years” “for a few minutes,” “for a long time” It may be used with any tense except the simple present tense.

NOTE. “For” is often omitted We can say “I have been here for two years” “or” “I have been here two years.

376. From for Since.

Don't say: He has been ill from last Friday.

Say: He has been ill since last Friday.

The preposition “since” is placed before words or phrases denoting a point of time: as “since Monday” “since yesterday” “since eight o'clock” “since Christmas” When “since” is used the verb is usually in the present perfect tense but it may be in the past perfect: as “I was glad to see Tom I had not seen him since last Christmas.

NOTE. “From” can also denote a point of time but it must be followed by “to” or “till” as “He works from eight o'clock” till one o'clock” without resting.

377. After For In.

Don't say: I may be able to go after a week.

Say: I may be able to go in a week.

When we are speaking of space of time in the future. we must use "In" and not "after" Here "In" in cans after the end of.

378.In for Within.

Don't say: I'll come back in an hour-if you mean before the end of an hour.

Say: I'll come back within an hour.

"In" means after the end of: "within" means before the end of.

2. VERBS OFTEN CONFUSED

379.Shall and Will.

(a) To express simple futurity:

In the first person:

Don't say: I will go tomorrow if it is fine.

Say: I shall go tomorrow if it is fine.

In the second person:

Don't say: He tell me you shall go tomorrow.

Say: He tell me you will go tomorrow.

In the third person:

Don't say: He shall go if he has permission.

Say: He will go if he has permission.

(b) To express something more than simple futurity:

In the first person:

Don't say: I have determined that I shall go.

Say: I have determined that I will go.

In the second person:

Don't say: You will go out if you are good.

Say: You shall go out if you are good.

In the third person:

Don't say: My mind is made up: he will go.

To form the simple future, we use “shall” with the first person and “will” with the second and the third persons. “Will” in the first person denotes resolution or personal determination, and “shall” in the second and the third persons. denotes either a command or a promise.

NOTE. “Should” the past tense of “shall” and “would” the past tense of “will” have the same differences of meaning and use as the present forms “shall” and “will” as “I was afraid that I should fail” “I promised that I would help him.

380. Shall and May.

Distinguish between:

- (a) May I shut the door? and
- (b) Shall I shut the door?

“May” I shut the door ? means that I wish the door closed and I ask your permission to shut it. Shall I shut the door? means that I want to know whether you wish the door closed.

381. Say and Tell.

- (a) Say

Don't say: He told “I shall go home.”

He told that he would go home

Say: He said “I shall go home.”

He said that he would go home

- (b) Tell.

Don't say: He said to me that he would go home.

Say: He told me that he would go home.

“To say” is used (1) when referring to a person's actual words, and (2) in indirect speech if the sentence does not contain an indirect object. “To tell” is used in indirect speech when the sentence contains an indirect object. In sentence (b) the indirect object is “me”

NOTE. Common idioms with “say” and “tell” (a) “To say one’s prayers. “ 271
to say grace” “to say good morning “ “to say something or nothing” “to say no more”
“to say a good word for” “to say so “ (b) “To tell the truth” “to tell a lie” “to tell a
story” “to tell the time” “to tell a secret” “to tell the price” “to tell one’s fortune, “to tell
ome’s name”.

382. Make and Do.

(a) Make.

Don’t say: The carpenter did a large table.

Say: The carpenter made a large table.

(b) Do.

Don’t say: You must make your work carefully.

Say: You must do your work carefully.

“To make” primarily means to construct or manufacture something. While “to
do” means to accomplish a thing.

Note. Common idioms with “make” and “do” (a) “To make a mistake, “to make
a promise” “to make a speech” “to make an excuse” “to make haste” “to make fun of”
“to make progress” “to make a nose” “to make an experiment” “to make a bed (= to
prepare the bed for sleeping upon)” (b) “To go good” “to do evil” “to do one’s best” “to
do one a favour” “to do wrong” “to do a lesson” “to do a problem” “to do business” “to
do away with” “to do gymnastics” to do exercises”

383. Lie and Lay.

(a) Lie.

Don’t say: I am going to lay down for an hour.

Say: I am going to lie down for an hour.

(b) Lay.

Don’t say: Please lie this letter on the desk.

Say: Please lay this letter on the desk

“Lie” (= to rest) is an intransitive verb and never has an object” Lay”

(= to put) is a transitive verb and always requires an object. There principal parts are lie, lay, lain, lay, laid, laid.

NOTE. Lie, lied, is to tell an untruth: as "He has lied to me." Lay, laid, means also to produce eggs: as, "The hen has laid an egg." (Idiom: "Lay the table or "Lay the cloth" is to prepare the table for a meal.)

384. Sit and Seat.

(a) Sit

Don't say: We seat at a desk to write a letter.

Say: We sit at a desk to write a letter.

(b) Seat

Don't say: He sat the passengers one by one

Say: He seated the passengers one by one

"Sit" is best used only as an intransitive verb. "seat" is a transitive verb and requires an object. Very often the object of "seat" is a reflexive pronoun: as "He seated himself near the fire." The principal parts of the two verbs are: sit, sat; sat, and seat, seated, seated.

NOTE. 1 "Sit" must not be confused with "set." "Set" as a transitive verb means to make a thing sit as "Set the lamp on the table." "Set" as an intransitive verb means to go down (for sun, moon, or stars): as "The sun has set"

Note. 2 Common idioms with "set": "To set the table" (= to put everything ready for the plates for food) "to set on fire" "to set off (or out)" "to set in order" "to set a trap" "to set a clock" "to set a price" "to set a price on one's head" "to set one's heart on" "to set free" to set an example" "to set a broken bone" "to set to work" (= to start work).

385. Rise and Raise

(a) Rise.

Don't say: He raises very early in the morning.

Say: He rises very early in the morning.

Don't say: Pupils rise their hands too often.

Say: Pupils raise their hands too often.

“Rise” is an intransitive verb and means to go up, stand up, or get out of bed: it does not require an object. “Raise” is a transitive verb and means to lift up something. Their principal parts are: rise, rose, risen, and raise raised raised.

NOTE. “Arise” is often used for “rise” but it is better to use “arise” only in the sense of “begin” as “A quarrel (a discussion, an argument, a difficulty, etc.) may arise”.

386. Like and Love

(a) Like.

Don't say: Everybody loves polite people.

Say: Everybody likes polite people.

(b) Love.

Don't say: Parents like their children.

Say: Parents love their children.

Either verb may be used for persons or things. The only difference between them is one of degree: “to love” is very much stronger than “to like”. However the use of either verb may be correct as that will often depend upon the person speaking for example one person may like music while another one may love it.

387. Stay and Remain

(a) stay.

Don't say: We remained in a very good hotel.

Say: We stayed in a very good hotel.

(b) Remain

Don't say: Few figs have stayed on the tree.

Say: Few figs have remained on the tree.

Here “to stay” means to live for a short time as a guest or a visitor and “

to remain” means to be left after part has been or destroyed.

274

NOTE. Either verb. may be used when the meaning is to continue in the same place or condition: as “I shall stay (or remain) at home till tomorrow.”

388.Hanged and Hung.

(a) Hanged

Don't say: The murderer was caught and hung.

Say: The murderer was caught and hanged

(b) Hung.

Don't say: We hunged the picture on the wall.

Say: We hung the picture on the wall.

When the reference is to killing a person by hanging we use the form “hunged” in other cases, in the form is “hung” The pincipal parts of the two verb are: hung, hunged, hunged, hung, hung, hung.

389.Wear and put on.

(a) Wear.

Don't say: This man a ways puts on black shoes.

Say: This man a ways wears on black shoes.

(b) Put on

Don't say: I wear my clothes in the morning.

Say: I put on my clothes in the morning.

“Wear” means to have upon the body as a garment or as an ornament “To put on” denotes a simple act.

NOTE. To dess” has nearly the same meaning as “to put on” but the object of “dess” is a person and not a thing as He dressed himseif and went out “The monther dressed her baby.

390. Tear and Trae up.

(a) Tear.

Don't say: John tore up his coat on nail

(b) Tear up.

Don't say: He was angry and tore the letter.

Say: He was angry and tore up the letter.

“To tear” means to divide along a straight or irregular line. sometimes by accident; “to tear up” means to destroy by tearing to pieces.

NOTE. The word “up” is often used with verbs to express the idea of greater completeness: as burn up, drink up, dry up, cut up, cat up, shut up, use up.

391. Grow and Grow up.

(a) Grow.

Don't say: Babies grow up very quickly

Say: Babies grow very quickly

(b) Grow up

Don't say: When I grow I shall be a doctor.

Say: When I grow up I shall be a doctor.

“To grow” means to become bigger: “to grow up” means to become a man (or a woman).

NOTE. Other meanings of “grow” (1) to cultivate: as “Rice grow in Egypt (2) to cause to grow as We grow flowers in our garden (3) to allow to grow as “He grew a beard”. (4) to become as “ The nights grow cold in winter.

392. Pick and Pick up

(a) Pick.

Don't say: We picked up flowers in the garden.

Say: We picked flowers in the garden.

(b) Pick up.

Don't say: The naughty boy picked a stone.

Say: The naughty boy picked up a stone.

“To pick fruit or flowers” means to pull them away with the fingers

“to pick up” means to lift up from the ground.

276

393. Deal with and Deal in.

(a) Deal with

Don't say: This book deals in common errors.

Say: This book deals with common errors.

(b) Deal in.

Don't say: A book seller deals with books.

Say: A book seller deals in books.

“To deal with” means to have to do with “to deal in” means to buy and sell.

NOTE. “To deal with” also means (1) to do business with as I will not deal with that shopkeeper again (2) to arrange a matter as The headmaster will deal with that question.

394. Interfere with and Interfere in

(a) Interfere with

Don't say: The noise interfere in my work

Say: The noise interfere with my work

(b) Interfere in

Don't say: I never interfere with his affairs.

Say: I never interfere in his affairs.

“To interfere with” means to be an obstacle to “to interfere in” means to take part in other people's affairs without any right.

395. Borrow and Lend.

(a) Borrow

Don't say: I want to lend a book from you.

Say: I want to borrow a book from you.

(b) Lend.

Don't say: Will you please borrow me a book ?

Say: Will you please lend me a book ?

“to lend is to give something to someone.

396. Steal and Rob.

(a) Steal

Don't say: Someone has robbed all his money.

Say: Someone has stolen all his money.

(b) Rob.

Don't say: Some men stole a bank last night.

Say: Some men robbed a bank last night.

The object of “steal” is the thing taken by the thief such as money, a watch a bicycle. etc: while the object of “rob” is the person or place from whom (or which) the thing is taken, such as a man a house, or a bank.

397. Revenge and Avenge.

(a) Revenge

Don't say: I avenge myself for the insult.

Say: I revenge myself for the insult.

(b) Avenge.

Don't say: He now revenged his son's murder.

Say: He now avenged his son's murder.

“To revenge oneself” is to punish for a wrong done to oneself while “to avenge” is to punish on behalf of another usually the innocent or weak.

NOTE. The noun “revenge” is commonly used in the expressions “to take revenge on” and “to get or have one's revenge” as “He took revenge on the boy who had struck him” “He could not rest until he had his revenge.

398. Convince and Persuade.

(a) Convince

Don't say: I am now persuaded of his honesty.

Say: I am now convinced of his honesty.

Don't say: We could not convince him to play.

Say: We could not persuade him to play.

“To convince” is to make a person believe which “to persuade” means to get a person to do something.

NOTE. Care must be taken not to confuse “persuade” with “persuade” the past tense of “persuade” (= to follow).

399. Refuse and Deny.

(a) Refuse

Don't say: The boy denied to take the money.

Say: The boy refused to take the money.

(b) Deny.

Don't say: Jhon refused that he had done it.

Say: Jhon denied that he had done it.

“To refuse” means not to take what is offered or not to do what one is asked to do “to deny” means to answer in the negative or to say that a statement is not true.

400. Discover and Invent.

(a) Discover.

Don't say: America was invented by Columbus.

Say: America was discovered by Columbus.

(b) Invent.

Don't say: Edison discovered the gramophone.

Say: Edison invented the gramophone.

“To discover” is to find that which existed before but was unknown. and “to invent” is to make that which did not exist before.

401. Take place and Take part.

(a) Take place.

Don't say: The meeting will take part soon.

Say: The meeting will take place soon.

279

(b) Take part.

Don't say: I shall take place in the meeting

Say: I shall take part in the meeting

“to take place” means to happen or to be held; which “to take part” means to have a share in a thing.

402. Made of and Made from.

(a) Made of

Don't say: Tables are usually made from wood.

Say: Tables are usually made of wood.

(b) Made from.

Don't say: Bread is usually made of wheat.

Say: Bread is usually made from wheat.

“Made of” is used if the material of which the thing is made can still be seen: and “made from” if the material can no longer be seen.

403. Let for Rent.

Don't say: I let a house from Mr. Jones.

Say: I rented a house from Mr. Jones.

A landlord (= the owner) lets or rents a house, etc. but a tenant (= a person paying rent) rents a house, etc. only the owner can let a house, etc.

NOTE. “To hire” is to pay for the use of something for a short time as to hire a house, a bicycle, a car, a rowing-boat, or a concert hall for one evening. “To hire out” is to allow others to use something on payment: as “He hires out bicycles by the hour.”

404. Win for Earn.

Don't say: He wins his living by hard work.

Say: He earns his living by hard work.

“To earn” means to receive in return for work. “to win” is to obtain as a result of fighting competition, gambling, etc.

living or to gain a victory, a prize, etc.

405. Substitute for Replace.

Don’t say: They substituted gold by paper-money.

Say: They replaced gold by paper-money.

We replace one thing by another but we substitute one thing for another: as

“They substituted paper-money for gold.

406. Correct for Repair or Mend.

Don’t say: Some men are correcting the road.

Say: Some men are repairing the road.

“to correct” is to make something right: to correct mistakes, a composition a translation one’s pronunciation etc. “to repair” or “to mend” is to put in good condition after being damaged: “to repair or mend a road, clothes, shoes, etc.

NOTE. “to repair a watch” is to put it in good condition again but “to correct a watch” set it by the right time.

407. Dust for Cover with dust.

Don’t say: A sandstorm dusted our clothes.

Say: A sandstorm covered our clothes with.

“To dust” does not mean to cover with dust. but to remove dust from: as “After sweeping she dusted the furniture.”

408. Please for Ask or Thank.

Don’t say: I pleased him to do me a favour.

or: I pleased him for his fine present.

Say: I asked him to do me a favour.

and: I thanked him for his fine present.

“To please” means to give pleasure to: as “I worked hard to please my teacher.

409. Can for May.

Don’t say: Sir, can I go home to get my book?

Say: Sir, may I go home to get my book?

281

“Can” means to be able “may” means to have permission.

NOTE. In ordinary conversation “can” also has the meaning of permission as

“You can(= may) go now.

410. Could for Was able to.

Don't say: Because he worked hard he could finish the job in time.

Say: Because he worked hard he was able to finish the job in time.

If the meaning is managed to or succeeded in doing “was able to” and not “could” should be used.

411. Learn for Teach.

Don't say: He learned us how to play hockey.

Say: He taught us how to play hockey.

“Teach” means to give instruction “learn” means to receive instruction as He taught me English and I learned it quickly.

412. Win for Best.

Don't say: We have always won your team.

Say: We have always beaten your team.

“To win” is to gain something for which you have tried “to beat” is to overcome an opponent as The girls beat the boys. and so won the prize.

REMEMBER the principal parts of each verb: beat, beat beaten, and win, won, won.

413. Accept for Agree.

Don't say: The teacher accepted to go with us.

Say: The teacher agreed to go with us.

“Accept” means to take what is offered: as “I accepted his invitation “Agree” means to do what one is asked to do: as “He agreed to play” “Accept” cannot be followed by an infinitive.

NOTE. We agree with a person, but to a thing: as “ I agree with Mr. A but I cannot agree to his plan.

414. Leave for Let.

Don't say: He did not leave me to get my book.

Say: He did not let me to get my book.

“Let” means to allow. “Leave” means to abandon or to go away from: as “Do you leave your books in school?”

415. Bring for Take.

Don't say : I shall bring it to England with me.

Say : I shall take it to England with me.

When you go out with something, you take it; if you come in with something, then you bring it .

NOTE. “To fetch means to go and come back with something: as, “Please fetch me a glass of water” (= go and come back with a glass of water).

416. Drown for Sink.

Don't say : The ship was drowned in the ocean.

Say : The ship was sunk in the ocean.

“To be drowned” is used only of living things, and means to die in water; “to sink” is used of persons or things, and means to go down to the bottom of water.

417. See for Look.

Don't say : He was seeing out of the window.

Say : He was looking out of the window.

“To be drowned” is to notice with the eyes, but “to look” is to direct the eyes in order to see: as, “I looked up and saw the aeroplane.

418. Hear for Listen.

Don't say : I was hearing her sweet song.

Say : I was listening her sweet song.

“To listen” implies attention. “to hear” does not: as, “I heard them talking but I did not listen to what they said.” “To listen also means to accept advice: as, “He listens to his parents.”

419. Remember for Remind

Don't say : Please remember me to give it back.

Say : Please remind me to give it back.

“To remember” is to have in mind: as, “I remember what you told me.” “To remind” is to make another person remember something.

420. Leave for Let go.

Don't say : Leave the other end of the string.

Say : Let go of the other end of the string.

“Leave” cannot be used in the sense of “let go” (= give up one's hold).

421. Sleep for Go to Bed.

Don't say : I shall sleep early tonight.

Say : I shall go to bed early tonight.

“To go to bed” denotes the act of lying down on a bed in preparation for going to sleep. Thus we can say that a person “went to bed” at nine o'clock, but that he did not “sleep” until eleven o'clock. Then he “slept” soundly.

NOTE. “Go to sleep” means to fall asleep: as, “He went to sleep while he was in the cinema.”

422. To be found for To be.

Don't say : The man was found in his office.

Say : The man was in his office.

In English, the verb “to be found” generally means “to be discovered”: as, “Diamonds are found in Africa and in India.” Therefore, “He was found in his office” would suggest that the man had hidden himself in his office and was later discovered.

423. To be with for To have

Don't say : My English book is with my brother.

Say : My brother has my English book.

Avoid using “to be with” in the sense of “to have” “To be with” means to be together or in company of : as, “He is with his parents.”

424. Take for Get (or Receive).

Don't say : He took a high mark in English.

Say : He got a high mark in English.

Or : He received a high mark in English.

“To take” means to obtain something intentionally or by force: as, “I took a book from the library”; “The army took the city.” “to get” or “to receive” means to obtain something which is given one. such as a gift, a letter, money, or mark in the examination.

425. Like for Want, etc

Don't say : Do you like to see my collection?

Say : Do you want to see my collection?

“Do you like to do something?” means do you enjoy doing it as a habitual action. “Do you want to do something?” means do you wish to do it now.

NOTE. But “I should like” means I want: as. “I should like (= I want) to play tennis today”; “would you like (= do you want) to go for a walk with me?”

426. I don't have for I haven't.

Don't say : I don't have time to see you today.

Say : I haven't time to see you today.

“I don’t have” is used for thing occurring habitually: as, “I don’t have fruit for breakfast.” “He hasn’t” is used to refer to particular occasions, and means I haven’t something now.

427. Know for Learn, etc.

Don’t say : He went to school to know English.

Say : He went to school to learn English.

“Know” is used when “learning” is finished: as, “He knows how to swim.”

Similarly, avoid using “know” with the meaning of “find out” or “realize.”

428. Read for Study.

Don’t say : He is reading algebra in his room.

Say : He is studying algebra in his room.

“To study” means to try to learn: “to read” does not imply any effort. Thus, a student “studies” English, mathematics, history and other subjects: he “reads” a story, a letter, or a newspaper. But “He is reading for a degree in Arts” is correct.

429. Learn for Study.

Don’t say : He is learning at Gordon College.

Say : He is studying at Gordon College.

The expression “I learn at (Gordon College,” etc.) is incorrect. Say “I study at (Gordon College,” etc.) or “I am student of (Gordon College,” etc.)

430. Take for Buy

Don’t say : I went to the baker’s to take bread.

Say : I went to the baker’s to buy bread.

Never use “take” in the sense of “buy”.

431. Take out for Take off.

Don’t say : I took out his hat and overcoat.

Say : I took off his hat and overcoat.

The opposite of “put on” is “take off” and not “take out”.

432. Leave for Give up, etc.

Don't say : I have now left football.

Say : I have now given up football.

Or : I have now stopped playing football.

“Leave” should never be used in the meaning of “give up,” or “stop” something.

433. Sympathize for Like

Don't say : I don't sympathize him very much.

Say : I don't like him very much.

“sympathize” is not synonymous with “like” “To sympathize with” means to share some feeling (usually of sorrow) with another person: as “I sympathize with you in your sorrow.”

434. Put for Keep

Don't say : Do you put your money in the bank?

Say : Do you keep your money in the bank?

It is better to use keep of a more or less permanent resting place, and “put” of a temporary one.

435. Care for for Take care of.

Don't say : He doesn't care for his money.

Say : He doesn't take care of his money.

“Care for” cannot be used in the sense of “take care of.” “To care for” means to like: as, “I don't care for the book” (= I don't like the book”).

NOTE. Avoid also such expressions as; (1) “He does not care for my advice”; (2) “He does not care for his work”; (3) “He took no care of him”; (4) “No one cared for him during his illness.” Say: (1) “He pays no attention to my advice”; (2) “He takes no care over his work”; (3) “He took no notice of him”; (4) “No one took care of him during his illness.”

436. Let for Make (= to force).

Don't say : He let him write the fifty times.

Say : He made him write it fifty times

“Let” cannot be used in the sense of “make” meaning “to force”.

437. Flown for Flowed

Don't say : The river has flown over its banks.

Say : The river has flowed over its banks.

“Flown” is the past participle of “fly” the past participle of “flow” (= to move as water) is “flowed.” The principal parts of the two verbs are : fly, flew, flown-flow, flowed, flowed.

NOTE. “Flee, fled, fled” means to run away : as “We flee from danger.” “Float, floated, floated” means to rest or move on the surface of water or other or other liquid : as, Ships float on the water.”

438. Fall for Fell.

Don't say : John fall down and broke his leg.

Say : John fell down and broke his leg.

The past tense of this verb is “fell,” not “Fall” its principal parts are : fall, fell, Fallen.

NOTE. Fell, felled, felled” means to knock or cut down : as. “The wood-cutter felled a large tree.”

439. Found for Find.

Don't say : He tried to found his lost book.

Say : He tried to find his lost book.

“To find” is a very common verb meaning to get back a thing lost. Its principal parts are : find, found, found.

NOTE. There is, however, another verb “to found,” meaning to establish : as, “He founded the school fifty years ago.”

3. ADVERBS OFTEN CONFUSED

440. Very and Too.

(a) Very.

Don't say : Here it is too hot in the summer.

Say : Here it is very hot in the summer.

(b) Too

Don't say : It is now very hot to play football.

Say : It is now too hot to play football.

“Very” simply makes the adjective or adverb stronger. “Too” means more than enough, or so much that something else happens as a result. The sentence “It is too hot in the summer” is not complete : too hot for what ?” - “Too hot to play football,” up the incompleting phrase is used sometimes in spoken English.

441. Very and Much.

(a) Very.

Don't say : He is a much strong man.

It is a much interesting book.

Say : He is a very strong man.

It is a very interesting book.

(b) Much.

Don't say : He is very stronger than I am.

I am very obliged to my friend.

Say : He is much stronger than I am.

I am much obliged to my friend.

“Very” is used with adjectives and adverbs in the positive degree, and with present participles used as adjectives (like “interesting”) “Much” is used with adjectives and adverbs in the comparative degree, and with past participles.

NOTE . A few past participles that are used almost in the sense of adjectives may take “very” before them : as, I am very pleased (- glad) to see you” : I am very tired” “The accommodation is very limited.” But ; I was much (not very) afraid of falling.”

442. Too much for Very much.

He likes the cinema too much.

Don't say : He is too much stronger than I am.

I was too much astonished at the news.

He like the cinema very much.

Don't say : He is very much stronger than I am.

I was very much astonished at the news.

“Very much” is used instead of “much” for greater emphasis. “Too much” denotes an excessive quantity or degree : as excessive quantity or degree : as, “He ate too much. and became ill.”

NOTE. “Much” and “very much” cannot be used with certain verbs, like “work,” “try” “rain” “think” “to be hurt,” “to be injured.” Thus we say : He works” very hard” , “He tried very hard ; “It is raining hard ; He thinks deeply : He was badly hurt” “He was seriously injured.”

443. Before For Ago.

Don't say : I saw your friend two weeks.

Say : I saw your friend two weeks ago.

We use “ago” in counting from the time of speaking to a point in the past : as, “half an hour ago.” “three days ago,” “four months ago,” “five years ago” “a long time ago” We use “before” in counting from a distant to a nearer point in the past : as “Napoleon died in 1821 : he had lost the battle of Waterloo six years before.”

NOTE. When “ago” is used, the verb is always in the past tense “ as “He came five minutes ago.”

444. Hardly for haed.

Don't say : They said that he was hit hardly.

Say : They said that he was hit hard.

“Haed” means severely “Hardly” means not quite or scarcely as, “The baby can hardly walk.”

445. So for Very.

Don't say : I hear that he is not so rich.

Say : I hear that he is not very rich.

“So” cannot be used in the sense of “very” “The expression” “He is not so rich” implies a comparison: as “He is not so rich as you are.

446. By and by for Gradually.

Don't say : It is learning to walk by and by.

Say : It is gradually learning to walk.

“Gradually” means slowly or little by little ; “by and by” means soon or after a little while : as, By and by the school year will be over.”

447. Just now for Presently, etc.

Don't say : The messenger will arrive just now.

Say : The messenger will arrive presently.

If we are speaking of a near and immediate future time, we must use “presently,” “immediately,” or “soon” “Just now” refers to present or past time, and not to future time : as, “He is not at home just now (= at this moment) “He left just now (= a little time ago).”

448. Presently for At present.

Don't say : His uncle is presently in London.

Say : His uncle is at present in London.

“At present” and “presently” are not synonymous. “At present” means now, but “presently” means soon : as, “He will come back presently (= soon).”

449. Scarcely for rarely.

Don't say : He scarcely comes to see me now.

Say : He rarely comes to see me now.

“Scarcely” is not synonymous with “rarely.” “Rarely” means not often “scarcely” means not quite: as, “I had scarcely finished when he came.”

450. Lately for late.

Don't say : Last night I went to bed lately.

Say : Last night I went to bed late.

The opposite of “early” is “late,” not “lately.” “Lately” means in recent times : as “I haven't been there lately.”

4. ADJECTIVES OFTEN CONFUSED

451. Many and Much

(a) Many.

Don't say : My brother hasn't much books.

Say : My brother hasn't many books.

(b) Much.

Don't say : Is there much dust in the field ?

Say : Is there much dust in the field ?

“Many” is used with plural nouns : as, Many book or many boy: “much.” is used with singular nouns that have no plural : as, much water or much bread.

NOTE. In affirmative sentences many and much are generally replaced by a lot (of), a great deal (of), plenty (of), a good deal (of), a good many (of), a great number (of), a large quantity (of), etc.

452. Few and A Few.

(a) Few.

Don't say : Although the question was easy, a few boy were able to answer it.

Say : Although the question was easy, few boy were able to answer it.

(b) A few.

Don't say : Although the question was difficult, few boys were able to answer it.

Say : Although the question was difficult, a few boys were able to answer it.

“Few” means not many and emphasizes the smallness of the number. It is distinguished from “a few,” which means at least some.

453. Little and A little.

(a) Little.

Don't say : He slept a little and felt no better.

Say : He slept little and felt no better.

(b) A little

Don't say : He slept little and felt better.

Say : He slept a little and felt no better.

“Little” means not much and emphasizes the smallness of the amount. It is distinguished from “a little,” which means at least some.

454. Each and Every.

(a) Each.

Don't say : Every one of the two boys was wrong.

Say : Each one of the two boys was wrong.

(b) Every.

Don't say : She read each book of the library.

Say : She read every book of the library.

“Each” is used for one of two or more things, taken one by one. “every” is never used for two, but always for more than two things, taken as a group. “Each” is thus more individual and specific. but “every” is the more emphatic word.

NOTE. “Each” and “every” are always singular : as “Each (or every) one of the twenty boys has a book.”

455. His and Her.

(a) His.

Don't say : John visits her aunt every Sunday.

Say : John visits his aunt every Sunday.

(b) Her.

Don't say : Ann visits his uncle every Sunday.

Say : Ann visits her uncle every Sunday.

In English, possessive adjective (and pronouns) agree with the person who possesses. and not with the person or thing possessed. When the possessor, use "his," and when the possessor is feminine, use "her."

456. Older (oldest) and Elder (eldest).

(a) Older, Oldest.

Don't say: This boy is elder than that one.

This boy is the eldest of all.

Say : This boy is older than that one.

This boy is the oldest of all.

(b) Elder, Eldest.

Don't say: My older brother is called John.

My older brother is not here.

Say : My elder brother is called John.

My elder brother is not here.

"Older" and "oldest" are applied to both persons and things : while "elder" and "eldest" are applied only, and most frequently to related persons, (Warning : "Elder" cannot be followed by "than" as "Jane is older (not elder) than her sister.")

457. Interesting and Interested.

(a) Interesting.

Don't say : I have read an interested story.

Say : I have read an interesting story.

(b) Interested.

Don't say : Are you interesting in your work?

Say : Are you interested in your work?

“Interesting” refers to the thing which arouses interest : while

“interesting” refers to the person who takes an interest in the thing.

458. Wounded and Injured or Hurt.

(a) Wounded.

Don't say : Thousands were injured in the war.

Say : Thousands were injured in the war.

(b) Injured or Hurt.

Don't say : He was wounded in a moter accident.

Say : He was injured in a moter accident.

People are injured or hurt as a result of an accident, and wounded in buttle or in war. The nouns are injury and wound.)

459. Farther and Further.

(a) Farther.

Don't say : New York is further than London.

Say : New York is father than London.

(b) Further.

Don't say : I shall get father information.

Say : I shall get further information.

The disintion often made between the two words is that “farther” means more distant, and “further” means additional. However, current usage prefers “further” in a all meanings.

460. A for An.

Don't say : A animal ; a orange ; a hour.

Say : An animal ; a orange ; an hour.

“An” is used instead of “a” before a vowel or a silent “h” (as in “hour,” “heir,” “honest”) Before a long “u” or a syllable having the sound of “you.” we use “a”

(not “an” : as “a union” “a European” (but “an uncle”).

461. One for A (n)

Don't say : He found one ring in the street.

Say : He found a ring in the street.

The numeral “one” should not be used instead of the indefinite article “a” or “an” “One” is to be used only where the number is emphatic : as. “He gave me one book instead of two.”

462. Some for Any.

Don't say: Have you some lesson to prepare?

I haven't some lessons to prepare.

say: Have you any lessons to prepare?

I haven't any lessons to prepare.

“Any” (not “some”) must be used in interrogative and negative sentences.

NOTE. “some” is generally used in affirmative sentences, or in interrogative sentences expecting an affirmative answer; as, “Will you bring me some water?”

463. Less for Fewer.

Don't say: They have less books than I have.

say: They have fewer books than I have

“Less” denotes amount, quantity, value, or degree; “fewer” denotes number. Thus, we may have “less water,” “less food,” “less money,” “less education”; but “fewer books,” “fewer letters,” “fewer friends.”

NOTE. We say “less than (five, six, etc.) pounds” because the pounds are considered as a sum of money and not as a number of coins.

464. This for That.

Don't say: Look at this dog across the street.

say: Look at that dog across the street.

You cannot use “this” unless the object is being touched by you. “That” must be used to point out something distant, and the correct answer to “What is this?” is always “That is a . . .”

465.Latter for Later.

Don't say: She came to school latter than I.

say: She came to school later than I.

“Later” refers to time. “Latter” refers to order and means the second of two things just mentioned; as, “Alexandria and Cairo are large cities; the latter has a population of over a million.” The opposite of “latter” is “former.”

466.Last for Latter.

Don't say: Scott and Dickens are both excellent writers, but I prefer the last.

say: Scott and Dickens are both excellent writers, but I prefer the latter.

“The latter” means the second of two persons or things which have been mentioned; “the last” refers to a series of more than two.

467.Last for Latest.

Don't say: What is the last news of the war?

say: What is the latest news of the war?

“Latest” is the last up to the present. “Last” is the final one; as, “Z is the last letter of the alphabet.”

468.Small, Big for Young, Old.

Don't say: I am two years smaller than you.

He is three years bigger than I.

say: I am two years younger than you.

He is three years older than I.

If reference is to age, say “young” or “old. “Small” and “big” usually refer to size; as, “He is big (or small) for his age.”

NOTE. "Great" refers to the importance of a person or than; as, "Napoleon was a great man"; "Homer's Iliad is a great book." "Great" is also used with words like "distance," "height," "length," "depth"; as, "There is a great distance between the earth and the moon."

469. High for Tall.

Don't say: My elder brother is six feet high.

say: My elder brother is six feet tall.

"Tall" is generally used of person, and is the opposite of "short." "High" is used of trees, buildings, or mountains, and is the opposite of "low."

470. Lovely for Beloved.

Don't say: Joseph was Jacob's lovely son.

say: Joseph was Jacob's beloved son.

We should say "beloved" if we mean much loved. "Lovely" means beautiful; as, a lovely woman, a lovely day, etc.

NOTE. Care must also be taken not to confuse "lovely" with "favourite" (= most liked). Say: "Who is your favourite English writer?" or "What is your favourite game?"

471. Beautiful for Handsome or Good-looking.

Don't say: He has grown into a beautiful youth.

say: He has grown in a handsome youth.

We usually say that a man is handsome or good-looking, and that a woman is beautiful or pretty.

472. Sick for Ill.

don't say: He has been sick for over a year.

say: He had been ill for over a year.

"To be ill" means to be in bad health. "To be sick" generally means to be inclined to vomit or to be temporarily indisposed; as, "The smell made me sick."

473. Clear for Clean.

Don't say: You should keep your hands clear.

say: You should keep your hand clean.

“Clean” is the opposite of “dirty.” “Clear” means transparent or unclouded; as, “clear water,” “a clear sky.”

474. Angry for Sorry.

Don't say: I was angry to hear of his death.

say: I was sorry to hear of his death.

“Sorry” is the opposite of “glad.” “Angry” means annoyed or enraged; as, “He was angry when a boy hit him in the face.”

475. Nervous for Angry.

Don't say: Our teacher is very nervous today.

say: Our teacher is very angry today.

“nervous” denotes the habit of being easily excited or frightened. This word cannot be used in the sense of “angry,” which denotes only a temporary state.

5. NOUNS OFTEN CONFUSED

476. House and Home.

(a) House.

Don't say: Many new homes have been built.

say: Many new houses have been built.

(b) Home.

Don't say: You should go to your house now.

say: You should go home now.

Take care not to say ‘my house,’ ‘his house,’ or ‘your house’ when you should rather say ‘home.’ A ‘house’ is any building used for dwelling in, and ‘home’ is the particular house in which one is living.

NOTE. "Home" may also denote one's own country. When an Englishman says "I am going home this summer" he means going to England.

477. Street and Road.

(a) Street.

Don't say: The roads of the town are narrow.

say: The streets of the town are narrow.

(b) Road.

Don't say: Which is the street to the village?

say: Which is the road to the village?

A "street" is a way in a town or village with buildings on the sides; a "road" usually denotes a way leading from one town or village to another.

NOTE. We say "on the road" or "on the way," but "In the street."

478. Story and History.

(a) Story.

Don't say: She told me an interesting history.

say: She told me an interesting story.

(b) History.

Don't say: We study the story of the Romans.

say: We study the history of the Romans.

A "story" is an account of events which may or may not be true, "history" is a systematic record of past events.

479. Habit and Custom.

(a) Habit.

Don't say: Telling lies is a very bad custom.

say: Telling lies is a very bad habit.

(b) Custom.

Don't say: The Chinese have strange habits.

say: The Chinese have strange custome.

A “habit” belongs to the individual, but a “custom” belongs to a society or country.

480.Cause and Reason.

(a) Cause.

Don't say: What is the reason of a sandstorm?

say: What is the cause of a sandstorm?

(b) Reason.

Don't say: You have a good cause for coming.

say: You have a good reason for coming.

A “cause” is that which produces a result: a “reason” is that which explains or justifies a result.

481.Scene and Scenery.

(a) Scene.

Don't say: The scenery is of a beautiful lake.

say: The scene is of a beautiful lake.

(b) Scenery.

Don't say: The scene in Cyprus is beautiful.

say: The scenery in Cyprus is beautiful.

A “scene” refers to one particular place, while “scenery” refers to the general appearance of the country. “Scerery” cannot be used in the plural.

482.Centre and Middle.

(a) Centre.

Don't say: Can you find the middle off a table?

say: Can you find the centre off a table?

(b) Middle.

Don't say: He was in the centre of the street.

say: He was in the middle of the street.

“Centre” is a definite point, while “middle” is the indefinite space around or near the “centre.”

483. Shade and Shadow.

(a) Shade.

Don't say: That large tree makes a nice shadow.

say: That large tree makes a nice shade.

(b) Shadow.

Don't say: The dog saw his shade in the water.

say: The dog saw his shadow in the water.

“Shade” is a place sheltered from the sun; “shadow” is a shade of a distinct form, as of a tree, a man, a dog, etc.

484. Customer and Client.

(a) Customer.

Don't say: That grocer has plenty of clients.

say: That grocer has plenty of customers.

(b) Client.

Don't say: That lawyer has plenty of customers.

say: That lawyer has plenty of client.

A person can be a customer at a shop, but a client of a lawyer, a bank, etc.

485. Stranger for Guest.

Don't say: They had some strangers last night.

say: They had some guests last night.

A “guest” is usually a friend who comes to our house for a visit, while a “stranger” is a person unknown to us.

NOTE. A “foreigner” is a person born in another country and speaking a foreign language.

486.Travel for Journey.

Don't say: Our travel to England was pleasant.

say: Our journey to England was pleasant.

“Journey” is the noun and “travel” is the verb, used to describe any method of moving from one place to another.

NOTE. We use the noun “travel” (1) in a general sense; as, “She loves travel”; (2) in the plural; as, “He has written a book about his travels.”

487.Foot for Leg.

Don't say: I hurt my foot-if the injury is anywhere above the ankle.

say: I hurt my leg.

“Leg” is the part of the body from the hip down to the ankle, and “foot” is the part below the ankle. (“Hand” must also be carefully distinguished from “arm.”)

NOTE. The “leg” of a chair, a table, a bed; the “foot” of a hill, a wall, a ladder, a page.

488.Finger for Toe.

Don't say: I hurt a finger of my right foot.

say: I hurt a toe of my right foot.

“Fingers” are on the hand and “toes” are on the foot.

489.Poetry for Poem.

Don't say: I have a poetry to learn by heart.

say: I have a poem to learn by heart.

“Poetry” is the form of literature dealing with poems; “poem” is one piece of poetry.

490.Theatre for Play.

Don't say: We shall have a theatre tonight.

say: We shall have a play tonight.

A “theatre” is a building in which plays are acted, not the “play” itself.

491. Play for Game.

Don't say: They had a nice play of football.

say: They had a nice game of football.

Avoid using "play" in the sense of "game." "Play" means amusement; as, "He is fond of play."

492. Dress for Suit.

Don't say: My elder brother has a new dress.

say: My elder brother has a new suit.

Girls and women wear "dresses"; boys and men wear "suits." "Clothes" may denote either a dress or a suit; as, "John for Mary is wearing new clothes."

493. Gentleman for Man.

Don't say: I have met a fat gentleman today.

say: I have met a fat man today.

It is best to use "gentleman" only when referring to a man's character; as, "He is a real gentleman"; or "He is not a gentleman."

494. Individual for Person.

Don't say: Only five individuals were present.

say: Only five persons were present.

"Individual" is used of a single person as opposed to the group; as, "The individual must act for the good of the community"

495. Men for People.

Don't say: All the streets were full of men.

say: All the streets were full of people.

"People" and not "men" should be used when the reference is to human beings in general.

496. Woman for Wife.

Don't say: The man took his woman with him.

say: The man took his wife with him.

302

In English, these two words are carefully distinguished; “woman” should not be used instead of “wife.”

497. Cost for Price.

Don't say: What is the cost of this watch?

say: What is the price of this watch?

“Price” is the amount of money paid by the customer; “cost” is the amount paid by the shopkeeper. But we can say “How much does it cost?”

498. Air for Wind.

Don't say: The strong air blew his hat away.

say: The strong wind blew his hat away.

“Air” is what we breathe, and “wind” is what makes the leaves of the trees move.

499. Ground for Floor.

Don't say: When I entered the room, I saw a book on the ground.

say: When I entered the room. I saw a book on the floor.

The “floor” is the part of the room on which we walk; the “ground” is outside the house.

500. Place for Room.

Don't say: Is there place for me in the bus?

say: Is there room for me in the bus?

“Place” cannot be used in the sense of “room,” which means here “unoccupied space.”

501. Organ for Instrument.

Don't say: What other organ can you play?

say: What other instrument can you play?

“Organ” cannot be used to denote any musical instrument; the “organ” is a particular musical instrument used in some churches to accompany the singing of hymns.

502.Appetite for Desire, etc.

Don't say: I have no appetite at all to study.

say: I have no desire at all to study.

“Appetite” is generally used of food. For study, work, or play we use such words as “desire,” “disposition,” and “inclination.”

6. CONFUSION OF NUMBER

(a) The following cannot be used in the plural:

503.Advice.

don't say: He gave me some good advices.

say: He gave me some good advice.

NOTE. When only one thing is meant we say, “a piece of advice”; ad, “Let me give you a piece of advice.”

504.Information.

Don't say: Can you give me any informations?

say: Can you give me any information?

NOTE. When only one thing is meant we say “an item or a bit of information”; as, “He gave me a useful item of information.”

505.Furniture.

Don't say: Furnitures are often made of wood.

say: Furniture is often mde of wood.

NOTE. “Furniture” is a singular noun and always takes a singular verb and pronoun. “A piece of furniture” means one thing only.

506.Luggage.

Don't say: His luggages are at the station.

304

say: His luggage are at the station.

NOTE. "Baggage," another word for "luggage," cannot be used in the plural either; as, "The baggage is ready for the train."

507. Damage.

Don't say: The fire caused many damages.

say: The fire caused many damage.

NOTE. The plural form "damages" denotes money paid to make good a loss; as, "The insurance company paid the man damages."

508. Work.

Don't say: Today I have many works to do.

say: Today I have many work to do.

NOTE. The plural form "works" means a factory or the writing of an author; as, "The works of Shakespeare are many" "I visited the iron works."

509. Character.

Don't say: The school builds good characters.

say: The school builds good character.

NOTE. The plural form "characters" denotes the letters of of the alphabet of the persons in a book or play.

510. Hair.

Don't say: That woman has beautiful hairs.

say: That woman has beautiful hair.

NOTE. But when "hair" is used to denote a single thread, the plural form is "hairs"; as, "I found two long hairs in my food."

511. Bread.

Don't say: Breads are sold at the baker's.

say: Bread are sold at the baker's.

NOTE. But we can say “a loaf of bread” and “loaves of bread”; as, “I bought a loaf (two, three, etc., loaves) of bread.”

512.Fish.

Don't say: Yesterday we had fishes for dinner.

say: Yesterday we had fish for dinner.

NOTE. “Fish” as food or in bulk (=large numbers) is always singular. The plural form (“fishes”) is now rarely used and denotes fish individually; as, “I caught three small fishes.”

513.Fruit.

Don't say: We haven't many fruits in summer.

say: We haven't many fruit in summer.

NOTE. The plural form “fruits” is rarely used and means different kinds of fruit; ad, “Cyprus produces oranges, apricots, and other fruits.”

514.Grass.

Don't say: The dog lay down on the grasses.

say: The dog lay down on the grass.

515.Dozen.

Don't say: I want to buy three dozens eggs.

say: I want to buy tree dozen eggs.

NOTE. But when “dozen” is not preceded by a number (like “three”) or by “a”, the plural form is used; as, “There were dozens of eggs.”

516.Hundred, etc.

Don't say: The town has fifty thousands people.

say: The town has fifty thousand people.

NOTE. But “hundred,” “thousand,” and “millon” take the plural form if they are not preceded by a numeral or by “a”; as, “Thousands of people were present.”

517.Sheep.

Don't say: Ten sheep are grazing in the field.

306

say: Ten sheep are grazing in the field.

NOTE. "sheep," "deer," "salmon," and a few other nouns have the same form for singular and plural. Thus, we say "one sheep" or "ten sheep."

518. Knowledge.

Don't say: He has good knowledges of history.

say: He has good knowledge of history.

519. Progress.

Don't say: The boy has made great progresses.

say: The boy has made great progress.

520. Thunder and Lightning.

Don't say: There were thunder and lightnings.

Say: There was thunder and lightning.

NOTE. When only one thing is meant we say "a crash of Thunder" and "a flash of lightning."

521. Machinery.

Don't say: They are now using new machineries.

Say: They are now using new machinery.

NOTE. "Machinery" is a singular noun and always takes a singular verb and pronoun. But we can say "a piece of machinery" or "pieces of machinery."

522. Mathematics, etc + singular verb

Don't say: Mathematics are not easy to learn.

Say: Mathematics is not easy to learn.

NOTE. The names of sciences and subjects ending in "ies" (like "mathematics" "physics" "politics" "gymnastics" generally take a singular verb.

523. Money + singular verb

Don't say: All his money are kept in the bank.

Say: All his money is kept in the bank.

NOTE. "Money" is a singular noun and always takes a singular verb and pronoun.

524. News + singular verb

Don't say: I am glad that the news are good.

Say: I am glad that the news is good.

NOTE. "New" though plural in form, always take a singular verb. If only one thing is meant we say "a piece or an item of news" as, "This is a good piece of news"

525. Scissors, etc. + plural verb.

Don't say: The scissors is lying on the table.

Say: The scissors are lying on the table.

NOTE. All the names of things consisting of two parts (like "scissors"

"trousers" spectacles" shears" pliers") take a plural verb. But we can say "A pair of (scissors, etc) is...."

526. People + plural verb.

Don't say: There is much people in the cinema.

Say: There are much people in the cinema.

NOTE. "People" meaning "nation" is singular the plural is "people" as "The Greeks are a brave people" "The people of Europe are often engaged in war."

527. Clothes + plural verb.

Don't say: Your cloth is an excellent fit.

Say: Your clothes are an excellent fit.

NOTE. "cloth" meaning the material of which clothes are made is singular, and has a plural form "cloths" (without the "e") as, "She cleaned the table with a cloth" "Merchants sell different kinds of cloths."

528. Riches + plural verb.

Don't say: It is said that riches has wing.

Say: It is said that riches have wing.

529. Wages + plural verb.

Don't say: He complains that his wage is low.

Say: He complains that his wages are low.

NOTE. "wages" is a plural noun and takes a plural verb. But we say "a" living wage.

530. Billiarde.

Don't say: Billiard is a very difficult gram.

Say: Billiards is a very difficult gram.

NOTE. "Billiards" "draughts," "darts" are always plural . but are followed by verbs in the singular.

531. Misuse of the adjective in the plural

Don't say: It is our duty to help the poors.

Say: It is our duty to help the poor.

NOTE. Adjective cannot take the plural form, even when they are used as nouns in the plural

532. Misuse of "as well as" with a plural verb.

Don't say: Tom as well as George are coming.

Say: Tom as well as George is coming.

Two singular nouns joined "as well as" require the verb to be singular

533. Misuse of "all" (= everything) with a plural verb.

Don't say: Nothing is left; all are lost

Say: Nothing is left; all is lost

"All" meaning everything takes a singular verb "all" meaning everybody, takes a plural verb as "All of us are present."

534. Misuse of the plural before "kind" or "sort"

Don't say: I don't like these kind of games.

Say: I don't like this kind of games.

A demonstrative adjective must agree in number with the noun which it qualifies. In the sentence given "kind" is singular and so should be the demonstrative adjective.

535. Misuse of the plural with the name of a language qualifying it.

Don't say: English are easier than German.

Say: English is easier than German.

Names of language are singular and always take a singular verb.

536. Misuse of "one" and parts of "one" with the singular.

Don't say: I read it in one and a half hour.

Say: I read it in one and a half hours.

In English the plural must be used with anything greater than one even if it is less than two.

537. Misuse of the singular with a collective noun of plurality.

Don't say: The class was divided in its opinion.

Say: The class were divided in their opinions.

A collective noun usually takes a singular verb, but when it denotes the individual members of the group and not the group as a whole a plural verb must be used.

538 "The number" and "A number"

(a) The number.

Don't say: The number of pupils are increasing.

Say: The number of pupils is increasing.

(b) A number.

Don't say: A number of pupils is absent today.

Say: A number of pupils are absent today.

When "number" is preceded by "the" it denotes a unit and is singular; when it is preceded by "a" it means several or many and is plural.

Don't say: This errors are made by foreigners.

Say: These errors are made by foreigners.

“This” changes to “these” if the noun that follows is in the plural number.

NOTE. Avoid also the use of “this” instead of the personal pronoun. “John and the book but he gave this to the personal. should be “John and the book but he gave it to his brother.

540.Misuse of “There is” for “There are”

Don't say: There is many boys waiting outside.

Say: There are many boys waiting outside.

“Thera is changes to “There are” if the noun that follows is in the plural number.

541.Misuse of “You was” For “You were.”

Don't say: You was very foolish to do that.

Say: You were very foolish to do that.

“Was” is singular and “were” is plural, but with the pronoun.

“you” even when it is singular in meaning. we always use

“were”

NOTE, But in conditions and wishes. “were” may be used with the singular: as
“If I were you,I should go” “I wish I were rich”

542.Misuse of “ life” etc for lives” etc.

Don't say: Many people lost their life at sea.

Say: Many people lost their lives at sea.

In English words like “life” “heart” “soul” “body” “mind” are used in the plural when they refer to more than one person

543.Non-agreement of the verb in number.

Don't say: A large supply of toys are expected.

Say: A large supply of toys is expected.

When the subject is singular, the verb must be singular and when the subject is plural, the verb must be plural also. Care must be taken when a plural noun comes between a singular subject and its verb, as in the example above.

7. CONFUSION OF PARTS OF SPEECH

544. As and Like.

(a) As.

Don't say: You do not play the game like I do

Say: You do not play the game as I do

(b) Like.

Don't say: You do not look as your brother

Say: You do not look like your brother

“As” is a conjunction, and is usually followed by a noun or pronoun in the nominative case. “Like” is not a conjunction, but an adjective which behaves like a preposition in being followed by a noun or pronoun in the objective case.

545. So and Such .

(a) So.

Don't say: It is such small that you cannot see it

Say: It is so small that you cannot see it

(b) Such.

Don't say: I have never seen so large animal before.

Say: I have never seen such a large animal before.

“So” is an adverb, and must qualify an adjective or another adverb: ‘such’ is an adjective and must qualify a noun.

546. No and Not.

(a) No.

Don't say: I have mistakes in dictation.

Say: I have no mistakes in dictation.

312

(b) Not.

Don't say: I have on any mistakes in dictation.

Say: I haven't (have not) any mistakes in dictation.

“No” meaning not any. is used as an adjective to qualify the noun. But if the noun is already qualified by an adjective . like “any” “much” “enough” the adverb “not’ must be used.

NOTE. “No” as an adverb is used only before a comparative: as, “I have no more to say”

547.Fool and Foolish.

(a) Fool.

Don't say: He said to me, “You are fool.”

Say: He said to me, “You are a fool.”

(b) Foolish

Don't say: He said to me, “You are a foolish.”

Say: He said to me, “You are foolish.”

“Fool” is a noun. and requires the article when used with the verb “ to be”
“Foolish” is an adjective. and cannot be used with the after the verb “ to be”

NOTE. “A fool” or “a foolish person” does not mean an insane person. but one who acts thoughtlessly.

548.Misuse of “due to’ as a preposition.

Don't say: He came late due to an accident.

Say: He came late because of an accident.

“Due to” should never be used as a preposition meaning because of. “due,” as an adjective here. is used correctly only when it qualifies some noun: as. “His” delay was due to an accident

549.Misuse of “friendly” as an adverb.

Don't say: He behaves friendly

Say: He behaves in a friendly manner.

313

The adverbial form is “In a friendly manner” “friendly” is an adjective: as, a friendly gram, to have friendly relations with one’s neighbours. etc.

550. Misuse of “truth” as an adjective.

Don’t say: Is it truth that he is very ill?

Say: Is it true that he is very ill?

“Truth” is not an adjective but a noun. The adjective is “true,” and is used with no article between it and the verb “to be”

551. Misuse of “plenty” as an adjective.

Don’t say: He had plenty work to do.

Say: He had plenty fo work to do.

“Plenty” is not an adjective but a noun, meaning a large number or amount. The adjective is “plentiful” as, :Oranges are cheap now because they are plentiful.”

552. Misuse of “coward” as an adjective.

Don’t say: He said, “You are a coward boy.”

Say: He said, “You are a coward.”

“Coward” (= one without courage) is the noun. The adjective is “cowardly”

553. Misuse of “rest” as an adjective.

Don’t say: I spent the rest day at home.

Say: I spent the rest of the day at home

here, “rest” is a noun, and cannot be used as an adjective in the meaning of what is left.

554. Misuse of “miser” as an adjective.

Don’t say: He loved money; he was miser.

Say: He loved money; he was a miser.

“Miser” is noun, and cannot be used as an adjective .

The adjective is “miserly”:as. “He wsa miserly.”

555. Misuse of “opened” sa an adjective.

Don't say: I have found all the windows opened.

314

Say: I have found all the windows open.

The adjective is "open" The past participle is "opened": as "Somebody has opened all the windows."

556. Misuse of "others" as an adjective.

Don't say: The others boys are not present.

Say: The other boys are not present.

"others" is not an adjective but pronoun. The adjective is "other" (without the "s"). But we can say. "The others are not present." omitting the noun "boys"

557. Misuse of "died" for "dead"

Don't say: I think his grandfather is died.

Say: I think his grandfather is dead

"died" is the past tense of "die" The adjective is "dead"

558. Misuse of "shoot" for "shot"

Don't say: I made a good shoot at the goal.

Say: I made a good shot at the goal.

"Shoot" (in football) is the verb. The noun is "shot"

559. Misuse of "it's" for "its."

Don't write: The bird was feeding it's young.

Write: The bird was feeding its young.

The possessive adjective 'its' is correctly written without the apostrophe. So also "hers," "ours," "yours," "theirs" take no apostrophe.

560. Misuse of "hot" as a noun.

Don't say: There is much hot this summer.

Say: It is very hot this summer.

"Hot" is an adjective only, and cannot be used as a noun. The noun is "heat"

561. Misuse of "pain" as a verb.

Don't say: I pain my leg or My leg is paining.

Say: I have (or feel) a pain in my leg.

315

“Pain” is generally used as a noun, and is preceded by “have” or “feel.”

562. Misuse of “worth” as a verb.

Don't say: My bicycle worths seven pounds.

Say: My bicycle worth seven pounds.

“worth” is not a verb. but an adjective

563. Misuse of “able” as a verb.

Don't say: The poor man does not able to play.

Say: The poor man is not able to play.

“Able” is an adjective. and cannot be used as a verb.

564. Misuse of “afraid” as a verb.

Don't say: John does not afraid of anybody.

Say: John is not afraid of anybody.

“afraid” is not verb but an adjective. and is generally used with the verb “to be.”

565. Misuse of “weight” as a verb.

Don't say: Have you weighted the letter?.

Say: Have you weighed the letter?.

“weight” is noun and cannot be used as a verb.

Then verb is “weigh” (without the “t”)

566. Misuse of “good ” for “well”.

Don't say: The goalkeeper plays very good.

Say: The goalkeeper plays very well.

“good ” is an adjective. only. and cannot be used as an adverb.

567. Misuse of adjective for adverb.

Don't say: The little girl sang beautiful.

Say: The little girl sang beautifully.

An adverb. and not an adjective. should be used adjective. qualify a verb.

Note. Not other verbs such as “look” “feel” “sound”

“taste” “smell” an adjective. is used instead of an adverb: as.

“Sugar tastes sweet (not sweetly).”

568 Misuse of “after” for “afterwards,” etc.

Don't say: After we went home for dinner.

Say: Afterwards we went home for dinner.

“after” is a preposition and must be used with an object.

“Afterwards,” “Then,” “after that” are adverbs of time and can be used alone.
